
**UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**
Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM 10-K

(Mark one)

ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the fiscal year ended January 2, 2018
OR

TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the transition period from _____ to _____
Commission File Number: 001-36197

DEL TACO RESTAURANTS, INC.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware
(State or other jurisdiction of
incorporation or organization)

46-3340980
(I.R.S. Employer
Identification Number)

25521 Commercentre Drive
Lake Forest, California
(Address of principal executive offices)

92630
(Zip Code)

(949) 462-9300
(Registrant's telephone number, including area code)

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of each class	Name of each exchange on which registered
Common Stock, \$0.0001 Par Value	NASDAQ Capital Market
Warrants, each warrant exercisable for one share of common stock	

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act:

None
(Title of Each Class)

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports by Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Act. Yes No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate website, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files). Yes No

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K (Section 229.405 of this chapter) is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of the registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statement incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company" and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. (Check one):

Large accelerated filer	<input type="checkbox"/>	Accelerated filer	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Non-accelerated filer	<input type="checkbox"/> (Do not check if a smaller reporting company)	Smaller reporting company	<input type="checkbox"/>
		Emerging growth company	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. Yes No

The aggregate market value of the common stock held by non-affiliates of the registrant as of the last business day of the registrant's most recently completed second fiscal quarter, computed by reference to the closing price reported on the NASDAQ Capital Market as of June 20, 2017, was \$475.0 million .

As of March 12, 2018, there were 38,445,409 shares of the registrant's common stock issued and outstanding.

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

Portions of the registrant's definitive proxy statement relating to the registrant's 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders to be filed pursuant to Regulation 14A within 120 days after the registrant's fiscal year end of January 2, 2018, are incorporated by reference into Part III of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

[Table of Contents](#)

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Index

PART I

Item 1. Business	2
Item 1A. Risk Factors	12
Item 1B. Unresolved Staff Comments	33
Item 2. Properties	33
Item 3. Legal Proceedings	33
Item 4. Mine Safety Disclosures	34

PART II

Item 5. Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases	35
Item 6. Selected Financial Data	38
Item 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations	42
Item 7A. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk	67
Item 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data	69
Item 9. Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosures	111
Item 9A. Controls and Procedures	111
Item 9B. Other Information	113

PART III

Item 10. Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance	113
Item 11. Executive Compensation	113
Item 12. Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Managements and Related Stockholder Matters	113
Item 13. Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence	114
Item 14. Principal Accounting Fees and Services	114

PART IV

Item 15. Exhibits, Financial Statement Schedules	115
Signatures	117

CAUTIONARY NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

In addition to historical information, this Annual Report on Form 10-K may contain a number of “forward-looking statements” as defined in the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. Forward-looking statements include, without limitation, information concerning Del Taco Restaurant, Inc.'s (“Del Taco”) possible or assumed future results of operations, business strategies, competitive position, industry environment, potential growth opportunities and the effects of regulation. These statements are based on Del Taco management’s current expectations and beliefs, as well as a number of assumptions concerning future events. When used in this Annual Report, the words “estimates,” “projected,” “expects,” “anticipates,” “forecasts,” “plans,” “intends,” “believes,” “seeks,” “target,” “may,” “will,” “should,” “future,” “propose,” “preliminary,” “guidance,” “on track” and variations of these words or similar expressions (or the negative versions of such words or expressions) are intended to identify forward-looking statements. Such forward-looking statements are subject to known and unknown risks, uncertainties, assumptions and other important factors, many of which are outside Del Taco management’s control that could cause actual results to differ materially from the results discussed in the forward-looking statements. These risks include, without limitation, consumer demand, our inability to successfully open company-operated or franchised restaurants or establish new markets, competition in our markets, our inability to grow and manage growth profitably, adverse changes in food and supply costs, our inability to access additional capital, changes in applicable laws or regulations, food safety and foodborne illness concerns, our inability to manage existing and to obtain additional franchisees, our inability to attract and retain qualified personnel, our inability to profitably expand into new markets, changes in, or the discontinuation of the Company's repurchase program, and the possibility that we may be adversely affected by other economic, business, and/or competitive factors. Additional risks and uncertainties are identified and discussed in Item 1A. Risk Factors in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. All subsequent written or oral forward-looking statements attributable to us or persons acting on our behalf are expressly qualified in their entirety by these risk factors. Del Taco undertakes no obligation to update any of its forward-looking statements to reflect events or circumstances after the date they were made, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise, except as may be required under applicable securities laws.

ITEM 1. *Business*

Company Overview

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. ("Del Taco", f/k/a Levy Acquisition Corporation ("LAC")) was originally incorporated in Delaware on August 2, 2013 as a special purpose acquisition company, formed for the purpose of effecting a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or other similar business combination with one or more businesses. On June 30, 2015 (the "Closing Date"), LAC consummated its business combination with Del Taco Holdings, Inc. ("DTH") pursuant to the agreement and plan of merger dated as of March 12, 2015 by and among LAC, Levy Merger Sub, LLC ("Levy Merger Sub"), LAC's wholly owned subsidiary, and DTH (the "Merger Agreement"). Under the Merger Agreement, Levy Merger Sub merged with and into DTH, with DTH surviving the merger as a wholly-owned subsidiary of LAC (the "Business Combination" or "Merger"). In connection with the closing of the Business Combination, LAC changed its name from Levy Acquisition Corp. to Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

As a result of the Business Combination, we are the acquirer for accounting purposes, and DTH is the acquiree and accounting predecessor. Our financial statement presentation distinguishes a "Predecessor" for DTH for periods prior to the Closing Date. We are the "Successor" for periods after the Closing Date, which includes consolidation of DTH subsequent to the Business Combination on June 30, 2015.

Del Taco is a nationwide operator and franchisor of restaurants featuring fresh and fast made-to-order cuisine, including both Mexican inspired and American classic dishes. As of January 2, 2018, there were 564 Del Taco restaurants, a majority of these in the Pacific Southwest. We serve our customers high-quality, freshly prepared food typical of fast casual restaurants but with the speed, convenience and value associated with traditional quick service restaurants ("QSRs"). With attributes of both a fast casual restaurant and a QSR—a combination we call QSR+—we occupy a place in the restaurant market distinct from our competitors. Our food is prepared in working kitchens where our customers see cooks grilling marinated chicken and steak, chopping tomatoes and cilantro for salsa, grating cheddar cheese, slicing avocados and slow cooking whole pinto beans. And we believe that we are poised for growth, operating within the fastest growing segment of the restaurant industry, the limited service restaurant ("LSR") segment. With an average system check of \$7.41 during Fiscal 2017, we offer a compelling value proposition relative to both QSR and fast casual peers.

Our distinctive menu offers a combination of Mexican-inspired food, such as tacos and burritos, and American classics, such as "Double Del" cheeseburgers, crinkle-cut fries and milkshakes. The dual menu offers something for everyone, helping us attract a broader customer base than other Mexican LSRs while eliminating the "veto vote." Additionally, our menu features both premium items such as our Platos plated meals, Epic Burritos®, Handcrafted Ensaladas and Fresca Bowls as well as lower priced items on our Buck & Under Menu®. While the lower priced items appeal to a value-oriented customer, the Buck & Under Menu® is also designed to increase the average check by offering variety for customers wishing to supplement their order with an additional menu item. For the year ended January 2, 2018, approximately 20% of company-operated restaurant sales consisted of Buck & Under Menu® items. With our tiered pricing strategy, we appeal to customers from a wide variety of socio-economic backgrounds and price sensitivities.

We opened our first restaurant in Yermo, California in 1964. The original restaurant had a simple menu consisting of 19 cent tacos, tostadas and french fries and 24 cent cheeseburgers. Over the last nearly 54 years, located now in 14 states, we have grown to 312 company-operated and 252 franchise-operated restaurants as of January 2, 2018.

Competitive Strengths

We believe the following strengths differentiate us from our competitors and serve as the foundation for our continued growth:

Meeting Many Needs, our Concept has Broad Appeal. We are able to appeal to a broad group of customers due to our diverse menu featuring both Mexican and American staples, our 24-hour service model in most restaurants, the range of options we offer for any time of day or night, the comfort of our dining room paired with the convenience of our drive-thru, and our carefully considered pricing strategy with items of exceptional quality and value at different price points. Our QSR+ positioning sources traffic from both QSR and fast casual dining segments and we believe our diversified sales mix creates a flexible business model with multiple levers to drive restaurant sales growth. Because we are able to meet the varied needs of a wide range of customers, we have appeal in a variety of urban, suburban and other settings and in many different parts of the United States.

Table of Contents

Un *freshing* Believable® Food . We are committed to delivering made-to-order food, using fresh high quality ingredients in working kitchens. We emphasize both quality and speed and effectively market these strengths to customers both within the restaurants and beyond. The menu offers items that have been enjoyed by customers for decades in combination with newer offerings addressing market trends, such as the launch of Queso Blanco, made with real cheese, real milk, jalapeños and heavy cream, The Del Taco, our bigger, better-tasting crunchy beef or turkey taco, and Platos, our premium menu offering of individually-plated meals complete with an entrée, two sides, and chips and salsa. We also use limited-time specials to drive traffic, such as Carnitas, Jumbo Shrimp Tacos and the Epic® Surf and Turf Burrito. With our menu variety including tacos, burritos, quesadillas, bowls and handcrafted ensaladas, as well as burgers and fries, we are able to be highly responsive to customer demands and target underutilized day-parts with new menu initiatives. We prepare entrées to order, but are able to deliver the entrée to the customer, on average, in just over 2 minutes across all day-parts and service modes. Even with the addition of new products, the coordinated work of operational and marketing leadership helps ensure that a new item is only launched when operations are ready to deliver on our promises of speed, quality and value. We believe that the way we combine freshly prepared food in working kitchens with our speed of service model and the skill of our trained and certified team members provides a layer of competitive insulation.

Inviting Atmosphere . In order to enhance our competitive positioning, we implemented a new restaurant design that targets both QSR and fast casual dining occasions. In the new design, restaurant exteriors feature a signature Del Taco logo, color palette and artwork that reinforces the brand identity and restaurant interiors feature open kitchens and visual “freshness cues” to highlight our commitment to freshly prepared food. We have already implemented key elements of our new restaurant design across the chain as part of a system-wide re-image program. As of the date of this Form 10-K, 100% of company-operated restaurants and substantially all of the restaurants in the entire Del Taco system have been re-imaged to include these new elements. In addition, our current new restaurant design includes a “freshness cooler” directly behind the point-of-order which showcases our fresh produce, 40 pound block of cheddar cheese and handmade pico de gallo. At January 2, 2018, 279 system-wide restaurants had freshness coolers. We expect to continue backcasting this element across additional system-wide restaurants during 2018.

Promising Industry Segment . According to Technomic, a research and consulting firm servicing the foodservice industry, 2016 total sales increased 4.4% to \$220.4 billion for Limited Service Restaurants (“LSRs”) in the Technomic Top 500. With our QSR+ model, we believe that we offer QSR convenience and value with high quality fresh food associated with fast casual dining. According to the Technomic Top 500, the fast casual sub-segment grew 8.0% in 2016, to \$36.5 billion in total sales. We believe that our differentiated menu, enhanced restaurant design, aligned service model and convenient locations position us to compete successfully against other LSR concepts, providing us with a large addressable market.

Positive Demographic Trends. We believe we are well positioned to benefit from a number of culinary and demographic trends in the United States. We expect that over time an improving macroeconomic environment will raise consumer demand for restaurant services, increasing sales. Furthermore, as indicated by recent growth in the Mexican restaurant category, we expect to benefit from increased acceptance of and preference for Mexican food in the United States. Finally, we also anticipate benefits from the continued growth of the Hispanic population in the United States, which, according to the U.S. Census Bureau, has grown from 50.5 million people in 2009 to 57.5 million people in 2016, and is projected to reach 77.5 million in 2030. In addition, according to the U.S. Census Bureau, the growth of the Hispanic population is expected to outpace overall population growth, and the Hispanic population as a percentage of the total U.S. population is expected to increase from 16.3% in 2011 to 21.6% by 2030.

Data Driven Operations Culture. To deliver on our brand promise and ensure that “every guest leaves happy,” we utilize a balanced measurement system for all our restaurants. Elements included are customer surveys, internal audits, staffing metrics, speed of service metrics, sales metrics, and key controllable costs. This provides corporate and field management, as well as restaurant-level operators, insight into how they are performing both from the customer’s perspective but also through the lens of our internal standards, enabling operational initiatives to be tied to the needs of the customer. We take a disciplined approach to developing operational improvement initiatives; we evaluate results-driven behaviors in top performing restaurants using restaurant questing studies, general manager roundtables, and a formal Operations Advisory Committee comprised of both company and franchise operators. We believe our deep attention to research and customer feedback gives us a competitive advantage over restaurants less committed to understanding their customers and allows us to be proactive in our initiatives instead of merely responding to the competition.

Experienced Leadership . Our senior management team has extensive operating experience, with an average of 20 years of experience each in the restaurant industry. We are led by President and Chief Executive Officer, John Cappasola, who joined Del Taco in 2008, as a Vice President in Marketing through 2011 when he became our Chief Brand Officer until he became President in January 2017 and Chief Executive Officer in July 2017. Other key members of our senior leadership team include Steven Brake, Chief Financial Officer and David Pear, Senior Vice President of Operations. We believe the proven ability of the

[Table of Contents](#)

senior officers to work as a team will play a critical role in our ability to continue to achieve success in the future. We believe the senior management team is a key driver of Del Taco's success and has positioned it well for long-term growth.

Our Growth Strategy

We believe our differentiated QSR+ positioning within a growing market segment combined with a disciplined business model and strong unit economics, will lead to significant growth opportunities. Our plan to enhance the brand's competitive positioning and generate earnings per share growth involves several distinct strategies, including: expanding our store count in established markets where brand recognition is strong, driving restaurant sales growth, optimizing margins, and over time taking advantage of the significant "white space" in the United States where the Del Taco brand is not yet established.

Growing the Restaurant Base . We believe we are in the early stages of our growth story with 564 locations in 14 states (including one franchise-operated restaurant in Guam) as of January 2, 2018 . We estimate, based on internal analysis and a study prepared by a leading national consulting firm, a long-term total restaurant potential in the United States of 2,000 locations. For the year ended January 2, 2018 , we opened 12 new company-operated and 8 new franchise-operated restaurants, and in 2018 we intend to open 25 to 28 new system-wide restaurants across established and emerging markets including California, Georgia, Nevada, Utah, New Mexico, Oklahoma, Michigan, Florida, Arizona and Colorado. We believe that after 2018, the pace of development will continue to increase, with a continued focus on restaurants in markets where the brand is well established.

- Within in-fill markets, which we define as the Western one-third, where there is strong brand awareness and a loyal following, we have identified an in-fill opportunity of an additional 300+ potential new trade areas for restaurant development. We believe this presents a lower risk, high return expansion strategy, leveraging brand awareness, infrastructure and efficiencies of scale. We are currently in the process of accelerating our pipeline of in-fill locations, particularly in the Western United States.
- As we continue to increase and strengthen our position in in-fill markets, we also intend to continue to expand our presence in key emerging markets such as Oklahoma and Georgia, where the brand has been well received and where demand for additional units is high.
- We view our franchise program as an important resource for expanding the brand. In many new markets, the knowledge of a strategically selected franchisee as to local real estate, customers, employees, and marketing may enhance each restaurant's prospects for greater success more quickly. Where appropriate, we may consider opportunities to seed new territories with company-operated restaurants, but ultimately expect to have the majority of emerging market growth occur through franchisees. In both in-fill and emerging markets, we expect we will continue to strategically develop franchise relationships and grow our franchise restaurant base. We believe we are well positioned for growth in comparison to other national QSR concepts, many of which are heavily saturated in the United States and/or are highly limited by existing franchise commitments.

Growing Same Store Sales. We have developed an integrated strategic approach that aligns restaurant operations initiatives with marketing and menu innovation. This is the foundation for our sales growth within our existing restaurants. We plan to drive continued same store sales growth by increasing customer frequency, attracting new customers and improving per transaction spend. To accomplish this, we aim to enhance our QSR+ positioning and customer perceptions with targeted capital investment in the restaurant experience, optimized marketing spend across traditional and non-traditional channels, and continued introduction of new products and packaging driven by customer demand, industry trends, and a focus on day-part opportunities. We also believe we are well positioned in the Mexican LSR segment to benefit from shifting culinary and demographic trends in the United States.

Menu Strategy and Innovation . We intend to continue to evolve our menu to create platforms that convey the differentiated QSR+ positioning and reinforce our "We Start with Fresh and Serve with Value" brand position. We believe we have opportunities for menu innovation as we look to provide customers more choices through quality/value platforms such as The Del Taco, Platos, Epic Burritos®, Handcrafted Ensaladas, Fresca Bowls and Queso Blanco. In addition, we will continue to tap in to the need for price/value offerings by building on the success of our value/variety Buck & Under Menu® and mid-tier products. Our marketing and operations teams have demonstrated an ability to collaborate to ensure that the items developed in our test kitchen can be executed to high standards in the restaurants with the speed, value and quality that our customers expect.

Driving Brand Awareness and Consumer Engagement . We engage consumers through 8 to 10 annual promotional windows which feature seasonal favorites such as shrimp tacos, quality enhancing platforms such as Queso Blanco,

[Table of Contents](#)

Platos, Fresca Bowls and Handcrafted Salads, and strong value propositions showcased by the Buck & Under Menu® platform. The key points of differentiation are communicated through our “Un *freshing* Believable®” advertising campaign.

Restaurant Re-image Program. In 2012, we launched our restaurant re-image program, called Ambience Shake-Up, which was completed by all company-operated restaurants by mid-2013 at an average cost of approximately \$45,000 per restaurant. The Ambience Shake-Up, together with the other elements of our integrated strategy, has contributed to the acceleration in same store sales by aligning the restaurant appearance with our brand image to support and drive our QSR + positioning. The re-imaged restaurants include revitalized exteriors and visual cues which highlight the quality and freshness of our ingredients, and provides a more modern feel and inviting experience in the dining areas. As of the date of this Form 10-K, 100% of company-operated restaurants and substantially all system restaurants feature the new image.

Leverage Our Infrastructure. Since 2012, we have increased our restaurant contribution margin by 250 basis points, to 19.7% . Over time we believe we can continue to optimize our margins with effective menu pricing, by maintaining fiscal discipline, increasing fixed-cost leverage and enhancing our supply chain efforts. We currently have an infrastructure that allows us and our franchisees to grow and manage the productivity of each restaurant on a real-time basis. Additionally, we believe over time, as our restaurant base matures and average unit volumes ("AUVs") increase, we will be able to leverage corporate costs as over time general and administrative expenses are expected to grow at a slower rate than revenues. As the restaurant base and restaurant sales expand, we will potentially have larger media budgets, allowing us to target specific opportunistic areas with incremental marketing campaigns.

Site Selection and Expansion

New Restaurant Development

We believe we are well positioned for growth with improved unit economics, desirable returns on invested capital, and a strong cash flow available for investment. For the year ended January 2, 2018 , we opened 12 new company-operated restaurants and our franchisees opened 8 new restaurants, and in 2018 we intend to open between 25 and 28 new system-wide restaurants across our established and emerging markets. We believe that after 2018, the pace of development will continue to increase, with a continued focus on restaurants in in-fill markets where the brand is well established.

The strategy for restaurant development is three fold. First, in the near term, with an identified in-fill opportunity of an additional 300+ potential new trade areas for restaurant development (company-operated and franchise), we are accelerating our pipeline of in-fill locations to leverage the brand awareness, infrastructure and efficiencies of scale through what we believe is a lower risk, higher return expansion opportunity. Second, we will continue to develop company-operated restaurants in emerging markets such as Atlanta and Oklahoma City, establishing operational expertise, while recruiting additional franchisees to enable us to embed and scale our brand more rapidly. In some markets, we may explore a re-franchising strategy if we believe it will enhance growth opportunities and longer term earnings per share. Finally, over time we will be entering emerging new markets, primarily with new franchise partners and where appropriate, with company-operated restaurants. With substantial growth opportunities in established and emerging markets, efforts to expand into new markets will be carefully vetted and researched before they are undertaken and we expect that expansion into new emerging markets will be limited for the next few years.

Site Selection Process

We consider the location of a restaurant to be a critical variable in our long-term success and as such, we devote significant effort to the investigation and evaluation of potential restaurant locations, utilizing quantitative and qualitative modeling. Our in-house development team has significant prior experience working at other limited and full service brands. For company-operated restaurants, we use a combination of our in-house development team and outside real estate brokers to locate, evaluate and negotiate leases for new sites, taking into account demographic characteristics, residential and daytime population thresholds, retail presence, traffic counts and traffic patterns, along with the potential visibility and accessibility of the restaurant. The process for selecting locations applies management’s experience and expertise to an extensive set of objective data. In addition, we use a third-party data analytics tool to assist in the site selection and obtain information from a separate third party to support the analysis. Because our restaurants perform well across a variety of neighborhoods and demographics, we have flexibility in selecting new restaurant locations without taking on excessive operating risk.

We have primarily focused on developing freestanding or end-cap sites with drive-thrus. In the future, we may consider developing a prototype appropriate for other promising locations where a drive-thru is not feasible.

Table of Contents

New company-operated and franchise-operated restaurants are reviewed by our real estate committee, which includes senior management. The committee monitors ongoing performance to inform future site selection decisions.

Restaurant Design

A typical Del Taco restaurant is a free-standing building with drive-thru service that ranges in size from 2,000 to 2,600 square feet. The design creates a colorful, bright and contemporary restaurant environment. The exterior of each restaurant features a signature Del Taco logo, color palette and artwork that reinforces the brand identify; the interior generally features an open kitchen and various visual "freshness cues" including a "freshness cooler" to highlight the commitment to freshly prepared food. The colorful and contemporary dining rooms, typically with seating for approximately 60 people, include a variety of comfortable booths and seating arrangements with contemporary surfaces, artwork, visual "freshness cues" and a color palette that reinforces brand identity. The typical design features large windows and soft lighting.

Our new company-operated restaurants are typically ground-up prototypes or conversions. We estimate that a restaurant will require an average total net cash investment of approximately \$1.0 million, net of tenant allowances or sale leaseback proceeds for certain projects. On average, it takes approximately 18 months from identification of the specific site to the opening the restaurant. We have set processes and timelines to follow for all restaurant openings. Company-operated restaurants are constructed in approximately 13 weeks and the development and construction of new sites is the responsibility of the construction department. A conversion typically takes approximately 10 weeks to complete. The real estate department is responsible for locating and leasing potential restaurant sites and the construction department is then responsible for building the restaurants.

Underperforming Restaurants

During 2014, we identified 13 restaurants that generated atypically low sales volumes and negative restaurant contribution. These restaurants had been built before the current site selection criteria were established and many featured end-cap drive-thru facilities that current site selection criteria would suggest are not advisable. Further, these restaurants used an earlier iteration of the current prototype, which lacked certain design elements that are now included and that we believe contribute to higher sales volumes.

During the year ended December 30, 2014, we recorded impairment of long-lived assets charges totaling \$9.6 million related to these 13 underperforming restaurants that generated negative restaurant contribution of approximately \$1.6 million during the fifty-two weeks ended December 30, 2014. During the fourth quarter of fiscal 2015, we closed 12 of the 13 underperforming restaurants. Upon closure, we recorded restaurant closure charges totaling \$4.5 million, offset by \$2.7 million related to the reclassification of lease related liabilities, for a net charge of \$1.8 million. The net charge of \$1.8 million and additional charges of \$0.2 million related to other prior restaurant closures or sublease income shortfalls are both included in restaurant closure charges, net on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income (loss) for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015. The charges for the 12 underperforming restaurants represent (1) the present value of the future lease obligations, net of estimated sublease income, (2) a lease termination payment, (3) brokerage commissions, (4) post closure rent, utilities, property tax and common area maintenance charges, (5) unused food and paper that could not be redeployed, (6) Worker Adjustment and Retraining Notification ("WARN") act and stay bonus payments to terminated employees, and (7) other direct costs associated with the closures. We believe the estimated sublease income will permit a substantial recovery of the future lease obligations, which helps mitigate the initial restaurant closure charge and future annual cash sublease shortfalls.

Restaurant Management and Operations

Operations

We utilize a balanced scorecard measurement system for all company-operated restaurants. Elements included in the scorecard are customer surveys, internal audits, staffing metrics, speed of service metrics, sales metrics, and key controllable costs. Each period, managers of company-operated stores who are top performers on the scorecard are eligible for bonuses to reinforce this balanced approach to the business. The scorecard is also used by the operations leadership team to mine best practices.

To ensure brand consistency and integrity across all system restaurants, we utilize an internal operations audit program. Each restaurant is audited two or more times per year, and each audit results in two scores – a customer experience score and a brand standards score. We also have food safety and quality assurance programs for all system restaurants. Our auditors are part of the operations support team and provide regular performance analysis to the leadership team.

[Table of Contents](#)

Managers and Team Members

Each Del Taco restaurant typically has a general manager, four to six shift leaders, and two or three team leaders. There are also typically between 15 and 20 team members who prepare food and serve customers. Area Directors lead company-operated restaurants, with each typically responsible for approximately five to 12 restaurants. Overseeing the Area Directors are four Regional Directors, each responsible for approximately 60 to 100 restaurants. The franchise operations team utilizes six Franchise Business Consultants who each coach and oversee up to 60 franchise-operated restaurants. The Franchise Business Consultants report to the Vice President of Franchise Operations. The Senior Vice President of Operations has full accountability for both company-operated and franchise-operated restaurants, managing both sales and profitability targets and customer experience metrics.

Our hiring process is focused on identifying team members that are genuinely friendly, committed to preparing fresh food, and willing to ensure “every guest leaves happy.” We frequently cross-train our team members so they can fill any one of several positions to maximize labor efficiency. The investment in helping team members learn multiple skills and our internal promotion path has helped us build loyal teams that care about the success of their restaurant. Many team members and managers have been employed by us for longer than 5 years, and it is not uncommon to have team members with more than 10 years of seniority.

Training

Our senior management team fosters a culture of continuous learning and career growth at Del Taco. On the first day of employment, every team member receives the first of three training modules focused on helping the team member clearly understand the brand and their role. Subsequent modules focus on the specifics of how to provide a consistent customer experience. The current training program is a blended learning approach including self-paced reading, hands-on exercises and written knowledge validation tests. In 2015, we launched the next phase of our training program with the addition of tablet-based bilingual e-learning which includes interactive exercises, video tutorials and online testing.

A significant portion of the restaurant leadership is comprised of former team members who have advanced along the Del Taco career path. Top performing team members who display leadership qualities take the first step in the management development program and become team leaders. As team leader candidates enter the management development program, they receive additional training and are regularly tested on their knowledge and skills. Shift leader candidates will have completed the three modules, passed all of the required testing and have their knowledge validated during a practical evaluation of one of their shifts. An external candidate for a general manager role will complete six to seven weeks of intensive classroom and hands-on training in a certified training restaurant.

Franchise Program

Overview

We use a franchising strategy to augment new restaurant growth in new and established markets, allowing for brand expansion without significant capital investment. As of January 2, 2018, there were a total of 252 franchise restaurants. Franchisees range in size from single restaurant operators to multi-unit operators, the largest of which owns 40 locations. As of January 2, 2018 and January 3, 2017, our top 12 franchisees operated over 57% and 56%, respectively, of our franchise-operated restaurants and 20 franchisees operated approximately 69% of our franchise-operated restaurants for both years. The existing franchise base consists of numerous successful, longstanding restaurant operators.

We believe that franchise revenue provides stable and recurring cash flows to us and, as such, we plan to continue expanding the base of franchise-operated restaurants. In established markets, we will encourage continued growth from current franchisees and assist them in identifying and securing new locations. In emerging and new markets, we will source highly qualified and experienced new franchisees for multi-unit development opportunities. We generally seek franchisees from successful, non-competitive brands operating within the expansion markets. We market franchise opportunities through strategic networking, participation in select industry conferences, our existing website and printed materials.

We have several groups to enhance participation and engagement with the franchise community. The Franchise Marketing Advisory Team provides input and feedback on marketing strategy and initiatives. Our Operations Advisory Committee (“OAC”), comprised of experienced franchise and company operators, proposes and analyzes new equipment, training and procedures. The OAC has an ad hoc Design and Construction Advisory Team to advise on restaurant design standards.

Franchise Owner Support

We have structured our corporate staff, training programs, operational systems and communication systems to ensure we are delivering strong support to franchisees. We assist franchisees with the site selection process, and every new franchise location is scrutinized by our corporate real estate committee. We provide template plans franchisees may use for new restaurant

[Table of Contents](#)

construction and work with franchisees and their design and construction vendors to ensure compliance with brand specifications. A training program is required for all franchisees, operating partners and restaurant management staff. Training materials introduce new franchisees to our operational performance standards and the metrics that help maintain these high standards.

For the first two store openings in a market, we typically provide significant on-site support, with more modest support for subsequent locations. On an ongoing basis, we collect and disseminate customer experience feedback on a real time basis through a third party vendor. We also conduct regular on-site audits at each franchise location. Our Franchise Business Consultants are dedicated to ongoing franchise support and oversight, regularly visiting each franchise territory. We also employ dedicated Franchise Field Marketing Managers to assist franchisees with local marketing programs. We typically communicate with franchisees through an operations newsletter and hold regular regional workshops to update franchise teams and conduct training. We also hold an annual conference for franchisees, vendors and company operations leaders to review overall performance, celebrate shared success, communicate best practices, and plan for the year ahead.

Marketing and Advertising

We run a highly coordinated marketing and advertising campaign to create customer awareness, engage fans, and maximize positive brand associations. We use multiple marketing channels, including television, radio, outdoor and direct mail to broadly drive brand awareness. We advertise on local TV/Cable and local radio in our primary markets, and utilize local radio, print, internet advertising, and billboards for some of the less developed markets. We complement this with email marketing to our Raving Fan E-Club, which allows us to reach nearly 800,000 members, and via social media through Facebook, which allows us to reach over 600,000 followers. We use our Raving Fan e-Club database to invite sub-sets of members to the taste panel facility, located at our corporate office.

Through our public relations efforts, we engage notable food editors and bloggers on a range of topics to help promote products. In addition, we engage in one on one conversations using a portfolio of social media platforms which include Facebook, Twitter and Instagram. We also use social media as a research and customer service tool, and apply insight we gain to future marketing efforts.

Purchasing and Distribution

To ensure an adequate supply of high-quality ingredients and other necessary supplies, we carefully select our suppliers. Our quality assurance department performs comprehensive supplier audits on a regular schedule to ensure that products conform to company standards. To ensure that prices are competitive, we use forward, fixed and formula pricing protocols where possible. We monitor industry news, trade issues, weather, political and world events that may affect supply prices and we proactively attempt to lock in favorable pricing.

We contract with a single primary foodservice distributor for substantially all of our food and supplies. Our relationship with our primary distributor has been in place since 1990, and we believe the long-term relationship yields benefits to us and our franchisees in terms of reliability and pricing. Franchisees are required to use the primary distributor and must purchase all food and supplies from approved suppliers. In our normal course of business, we evaluate bids from multiple suppliers for various products. Taco meat is the largest product cost item and represented approximately 10% of the total cost for food and paper for 2017. Fluctuations in supply and prices can significantly impact our restaurant profit performance. We actively manage cost volatility for our significant food and paper items by negotiating with multiple suppliers and entering into what we believe are the most favorable contract terms given existing market conditions.

Intellectual Property

We have registered Del Taco®, Un *freshing* Believable®, Buck & Under Menu®, Epic Burritos®, and certain other names used by our restaurants as trademarks or service marks with the United States Patent and Trademark Office and in approximately nine foreign countries. Our current advertising campaign, Un *freshing* Believable®, has been approved for registration with the United States Patent and Trademark Office. In addition, the Del Taco logo, website name and domain name and the content on its Facebook and Twitter accounts are our intellectual property. We maintain the recipes for our taco meat, marinated grilled chicken and signature salsas, as well as certain proprietary standards, specifications and operating procedures, as trade secrets or confidential proprietary information.

We license the use of our registered trademarks to franchisees through franchise agreements. The franchise agreements restrict franchisees' activities with respect to the use of the trademarks and impose quality control standards in connection with goods and services offered in connection with the trademarks. Our general policy is to pursue and maintain registration of the service

[Table of Contents](#)

marks, trademarks and other intellectual property rights we use for our business in those countries where business strategy requires us to do so and to oppose vigorously any infringement or dilution of the service marks or trademarks in such countries.

Competition

We operate in the restaurant industry, which is highly competitive and fragmented. The number, size and strength of competitors vary by region. Our competition includes a variety of locally owned restaurants and national and regional chains that may offer dine-in, carry-out and delivery services. The competition includes restaurants, convenience food stores, delicatessens, supermarkets and club stores. Based on our differentiated QSR+ positioning, we compete both with fast casual restaurants, including Chipotle, El Pollo Loco, Panera Bread, Qdoba, Rubio's, and Habit, among others, and with traditional QSRs, such as Taco Bell, McDonald's, Burger King and Jack In the Box. In addition, we compete with franchisors of other restaurant concepts for prospective franchisees.

Environmental Matters

Our operations are subject to federal, state and local laws and regulations relating to environmental protection, including regulation of discharges into the air and water, storage and disposal of waste and clean-up of contaminated soil and groundwater. Under these laws, an owner or operator of real estate may be liable for the costs of removal or remediation of hazardous or toxic substances.

Certain of our properties may be located on sites that have been used by prior owners or operators as retail gas stations or other historical uses with the potential for environmental impacts. It is possible that properties on which our restaurants are located or which we owned in the past may contain forms of environmentally hazardous materials. We are aware of contamination from a release of hazardous materials by a previous owner or operator at two of our leased properties. We do not believe that we contributed to the contamination at these properties. The appropriate state agencies have been notified and these issues are being handled without disruption to our business. Under applicable federal and state environmental laws, the current owner or operator of these sites may be jointly and severally liable for the costs of investigation and remediation of any contamination. Although we lease almost all of our properties, or when we own the property we seek to obtain certain assurances from the prior owner or seek to obtain indemnity agreements from third parties, however, we cannot assure you that we will not be liable for environmental conditions relating to prior, existing or future restaurants or restaurant sites. If we are found liable for the costs of remediation of contamination at or emanating from any of our properties, operating expenses would likely increase and operating results could be materially adversely affected.

Regulation and Compliance

We are subject to extensive federal, state and local government regulation, including those relating to, among others, public health and safety, zoning and fire codes, and franchising. Although we have not experienced and do not anticipate any significant problems in obtaining required licenses, permits or approvals, any difficulties, delays or failures in this regard could delay or prevent the opening of a new restaurant or adversely impact the viability of an existing restaurant.

The development and construction of additional restaurants will be subject to compliance with applicable zoning, land use and environmental regulations. We believe existing laws and regulations in these areas have not had a material effect on us, but should such laws become more stringent or should we face different regulations in new territories, it could delay construction and increase development costs for new restaurants.

We are also subject to the Fair Labor Standards Act, the Americans with Disabilities Act, the Immigration Reform and Control Act of 1986 and various federal, state, and local laws governing such matters as minimum wages, overtime, paid sick leave, unemployment tax rates, workers' compensation rates, citizenship requirements and other working conditions. A significant portion of the hourly staff is paid at rates consistent with the applicable federal, state or local minimum wage and, accordingly, increases in the minimum wage will increase labor costs.

For a discussion of the various risks we may face from regulation and compliance matters, see Item 1A. "Risk Factors."

Management Information Systems

All of our company-operated and most franchise-operated restaurants use Aloha, a leading computerized point-of-sale system, which we believe is scalable to support our long-term growth plans. This point-of-sale system provides integrated, high speed credit card and gift card processing, specifically designed for the restaurant industry. The system collects daily transaction data,

Table of Contents

which generates information about daily sales, product mix and average transaction size that we actively analyze. It allows us to manage our products and pricing in every company-operated restaurant from the corporate office.

Our in-restaurant back office computer system assists in the management of our restaurants and provides labor and food cost management tools. The system provides corporate office and restaurant operations management quick access to detailed business data and reduces the time spent on administration. The system also provides sales, bank deposit and variance data to the accounting department on a daily basis. For company-operated restaurants, we use this data to generate daily sales information and weekly consolidated reports regarding sales and other key measures. Restaurant managers also have the ability to submit food and paper orders electronically to our primary distributor. During 2015, we successfully implemented a cloud-based information system which includes on-line recruiting tools, paperless employee files, and an on-line training system. Our systems and data are protected by advanced communication and data security systems.

Employees

As of January 2, 2018, we had 7,656 employees, which includes 311 salaried general managers and 7,144 hourly restaurant employees comprised of 5,504 crewmembers, 1,513 shift leaders and 127 assistant managers. The remaining 201 employees were corporate office personnel or above restaurant level management. None of the employees are part of a collective bargaining agreement.

Available Information

We maintain a website at www.deltaco.com, including an investor relations section at www.investor.deltaco.com in which we routinely post important information, such as webcasts of quarterly earnings calls and other investor events in which we participate or host, and any related materials. Our Code of Ethics is also available in this section of our website. You may access our annual reports on Form 10-K, quarterly reports on Form 10-Q, current reports on Form 8-K and amendments to those reports, as well as other reports relating to us that are filed with or furnished to the SEC, free of charge in the investor relations section of our website as soon as reasonably practicable after such material is electronically filed with or furnished to the SEC. The public may also read and copy materials we file with the SEC at the SEC's Public Reference Room, which is located at 100 F Street, NE, Room 1580, Washington, DC 20549. You can obtain information on the operation of the Public Reference Room by calling the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330. The SEC also maintains a website that contains reports, proxy and information statements and other information regarding issuers that file electronically with the SEC at www.sec.gov.

The contents of the websites mentioned above are not incorporated into and should not be considered a part of this report. The references to the URLs for these websites are intended to be inactive textual references only.

Executive Officers

The following table sets forth our current executive officers as of January 2, 2018:

Name	Age	Position
John D. Cappasola, Jr.	44	President and Chief Executive Officer
Steven L. Brake	45	Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer
David Pear	54	Senior Vice President of Operations

John D. Cappasola, Jr. has been our President and Chief Executive Officer since July 2017. From January 2017 to July 2017, Mr. Cappasola was our President and Chief Brand Officer. From 2012 to 2016, Mr. Cappasola was our Executive Vice President and has held the position of Chief Brand Officer since February 2011. Prior to that, Mr. Cappasola served as Vice President of Marketing since being appointed to that position in March 2009. From September 2008 to March 2009, he served as Vice President of Marketing Development. From August 2002 to September 2008, Mr. Cappasola held positions in marketing, strategic development, and operations at Blockbuster, Inc. of Dallas, Texas. Mr. Cappasola earned a Bachelor of Science degree in Business Management from California Coast University. Based on his extensive industry and management experience in the quick-service sector, his familiarity with us, his understanding of restaurant operations and his work at a franchisee organization, Mr. Cappasola is well qualified to lead us and to also serve on our board.

Steven L. Brake has been our Executive Vice President since July 2012. He is also the Chief Financial Officer and has held that position since April 2010 and previously served as Treasurer from March 2006 to April 2010 and as the Corporate Controller from September 2003 to March 2006. From December 1995 until September 2003, Mr. Brake was with Arthur Andersen and KPMG LLP. Mr. Brake is a licensed certified public accountant (inactive) and holds a Bachelor of Arts degree in

[Table of Contents](#)

Economics from the University of California, Irvine and a Masters in Business Administration from the Paul Merage School of Business at the University of California, Irvine.

David Pear has been our Senior Vice President of Operations since January 2012. From January 2009 to January 2012, Mr. Pear served as Director of DMA Operations for Taco Bell of Yum Brands. From 1985 to January 2009, Mr. Pear held various positions with Domino's Pizza, Inc., including Vice President Operations for Arizona from 2004 to 2008, and West Zone Vice President from 1994 to 2004. Mr. Pear has over 30 years of restaurant experience. Mr. Pear earned a Bachelor of Business Administration degree from Eastern Michigan University.

Table of Contents

ITEM 1A. ***Risk Factors***

You should carefully consider the following risk factors, together with all of the other information included in this annual report on Form 10-K. The risks described below are those which we believe are the material risks that we face. Additional risks not presently known to us or which we currently consider immaterial may also have an adverse effect on us. Any risk described below may have a material adverse impact on Del Taco's business or financial condition. Some statements in this annual report on Form 10-K, including such statements in the following risk factors, constitute forward-looking statements. These forward-looking statements are based on Del Taco management's current expectations, forecasts and assumption, and involve a number of risks and uncertainties. Accordingly, forward-looking statements should not be relied upon as representing our views as of any subsequent date, and we do not undertake any obligation to update forward-looking statements to reflect events or circumstances after the date they were made, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise, except as may be required under applicable securities laws.

Risks Related to Our Business and Industry

Our growth strategy depends in part on opening new restaurants in existing and new markets and expanding our franchise system. We may be unsuccessful in opening new company-operated or franchise-operated restaurants or establishing new markets, which could materially adversely affect our growth.

One of the key means to achieving our growth strategy will be through opening new restaurants and operating those restaurants on a profitable basis. We opened 12 new company-operated restaurants and 8 new franchise restaurants in 2017 and plan to open an estimated 25 to 28 new system-wide restaurants in 2018. Our ability to open new restaurants is dependent upon a number of factors, many of which are beyond our control, including our or our franchisees' ability to:

- identify available and suitable restaurant sites;
- compete for restaurant sites;
- identify, hire and train employees;
- reach acceptable agreements regarding the lease or purchase of locations;
- obtain or have available the financing required to acquire and operate a restaurant, including construction and opening costs, and managing such costs;
- respond to unforeseen engineering or environmental problems with leased or purchased premises;
- avoid the impact of inclement weather, natural disasters and other calamities;
- hire, train and retain the skilled management and other employees necessary to meet staffing needs;
- obtain, in a timely manner and for an acceptable cost, required licenses, permits and regulatory approvals and respond effectively to any changes in local, state or federal law and regulations that adversely affect our and franchisees' costs or ability to open new restaurants; and
- control construction and equipment cost increases for new restaurants.

There is no guarantee that a sufficient number of suitable restaurant sites will be available in desirable areas or on terms that are acceptable to us or our franchisees in order to achieve our growth plans. If we are unable to open new restaurants or sign new franchisees, or if restaurant openings are significantly delayed, our earnings and revenue growth could be adversely affected and our business negatively affected as we expect a portion of our growth to come from new locations.

Due to brand recognition and logistical synergies, as part of our growth strategy, we intend to open new restaurants in areas where we have existing restaurants. The operating results and same store sales for our existing restaurants could be adversely affected due to close proximity with our other restaurants and market saturation.

As part of our longer term growth strategy, we may also enter into geographic markets in which we have little or no prior operating or franchising experience through company-operated restaurant growth and through franchise development agreements. The challenges of entering new markets include: difficulties in hiring and training experienced personnel; unfamiliarity with local real estate markets and demographics; consumer unfamiliarity with our brand; and different competitive and economic conditions, consumer tastes and discretionary spending patterns that are more difficult to predict or satisfy than in our existing markets. Consumer recognition of our brand has been an important part of the success of company-operated and franchise-operated restaurants in our existing markets. In addition, restaurants we open in new markets may take longer to reach expected sales and profit levels on a consistent basis and may have higher construction, occupancy or operating costs than restaurants we open in existing markets, thereby affecting our overall profitability. Any failure on our part to recognize or respond to these challenges may adversely affect the success of any new restaurants. Expanding our franchise

[Table of Contents](#)

system could require the implementation, expense and successful management of enhanced business support systems, management information systems and financial controls as well as additional staffing, franchise support, capital expenditures and working capital.

Our progress in opening new restaurants from quarter to quarter may occur at an uneven rate. If we do not open new restaurants in the future according to our current plans, the delay could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

We may not realize the anticipated benefits from opening new restaurants in existing and new markets or from expanding our franchise system. For example, in Fiscal 2014, we recorded an impairment charge of \$9.6 million related to 13 underperforming restaurants that generated atypically low sales volumes and negative restaurant contribution, and in Fiscal 2015, we closed 12 of these restaurants. If opening new restaurants in existing and new markets or the expansion of our franchise system is not successful, our operating results could be materially adversely affected.

Opening new restaurants in existing markets may negatively impact sales at our existing restaurants.

The consumer target area of our restaurants varies by location, depending on a number of factors, including population density, other local retail and business attractions, area demographics and geography. In the near term, we are accelerating our pipeline of in-fill locations to leverage the brand awareness, infrastructure and efficiencies of scale. The opening of a new restaurant in or near markets in which we already have restaurants could adversely impact sales at these existing restaurants. Existing restaurants could also make it more difficult to build our consumer base for a new restaurant in the same market. Our core business strategy does not entail opening new restaurants that we believe will materially affect sales at our existing restaurants, but we may selectively open new restaurants in and around areas of existing restaurants to more effectively serve our customers.

We may not be able to compete successfully with other quick service and fast casual restaurants. Intense competition in the restaurant industry could make it more difficult to expand our business and could also have a negative impact on our operating results if customers favor our competitors or we are forced to change our pricing and other marketing strategies.

We face significant competition from restaurants in the quick service and fast casual dining segments of the restaurant industry. In addition, the Southern California and Las Vegas regions, the primary markets in which we compete, consist of very competitive Mexican-inspired quick service and fast casual markets. We expect competition in these markets and each of our other markets to continue to be intense because consumer trends are favoring limited service restaurants that offer healthier menu items made with better quality products and many quick service restaurants are responding to these trends. Competition in our industry is primarily based on price, convenience, quality of service, brand recognition, restaurant location and type and quality of food. If our company-operated and franchise-operated restaurants cannot compete successfully with other quick service and fast casual restaurants in new and existing markets, we could lose customers and our revenue could decline.

Our company-operated and franchise-operated restaurants compete with national and regional quick service and fast casual restaurant chains for customers, restaurant locations and qualified management and other staff. Many of our competitors have existed longer and have a more established market presence with substantially greater financial, marketing, personnel and other resources than we do. Among our competitors are a number of multi-unit, multi-market, fast casual restaurant concepts, some of which are expanding nationally. As they expand, we will face competition from these restaurant concepts as well as new competitors that strive to compete within our market segments. These competitors may have, among other things, lower operating costs, better locations, better facilities, better management, more effective marketing and more efficient operations. Additionally, we face the risk that new or existing competitors will copy our business model, menu options, brand presentation or ambience, among other things.

Any inability to successfully compete with the restaurants in our markets will place downward pressure on our customer traffic and may prevent us from increasing or sustaining our revenue and profitability. Consumer tastes, nutritional and dietary trends, traffic patterns and the type, number and location of competing restaurants often affect the restaurant business, and our competitors may react more efficiently and effectively to those conditions. In addition, many of our traditional fast food restaurant competitors may offer lower-priced menu options or meal packages, or have loyalty programs. Our sales could decline due to changes in popular tastes, “fad” food regimens, such as low carbohydrate diets, and media attention on new restaurants. If we are unable to continue to compete effectively, our traffic, sales and restaurant contribution could decline which would have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

We may not be able to adequately protect our intellectual property, which could harm the value of our brand and have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Our intellectual property is material to the conduct of our business. Our ability to implement our business plan successfully depends in part on our ability to further build brand recognition using our trademarks, service marks, trade dress and other proprietary intellectual property, including our name and logos and the unique ambience of our restaurants. While it is our policy to protect and defend vigorously our rights to our intellectual property, we cannot predict whether steps taken by us to protect our intellectual property rights will be adequate to prevent misappropriation of these rights or the use by others of restaurant features based upon, or otherwise similar to, our restaurant concept. It may be difficult for us to prevent others from copying elements of our concept and any litigation to enforce our rights will likely be costly and may not be successful. Although we believe that we have sufficient rights to all of our trademarks and service marks, we may face claims of infringement that could interfere with our ability to market our restaurants and promote our brand. Any such litigation may be costly and could divert resources from our business. Moreover, if we are unable to successfully defend against such claims, we may be prevented from using our trademarks or service marks in the future and may be liable for damages, which in turn could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

In addition, we license certain of our proprietary intellectual property, including our name and logos, to third parties. For example, we grant our franchisees a right to use certain of our trademarks in connection with their operation of the applicable restaurant. If a franchisee fails to maintain the quality of the restaurant operations associated with the licensed trademarks, the value of our trademarks could potentially be harmed. Negative publicity relating to the franchisee or licensee could also be incorrectly associated with Del Taco, which could harm our business. Failure to maintain, control and protect our trademarks and other proprietary intellectual property would likely have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations and on our ability to enter into new franchise agreements.

New restaurants, once opened, may not be profitable, and the increases in average restaurant revenue and same store sales that we have experienced in the past may not be indicative of future results.

Some of our restaurants open with an initial start-up period of higher than normal sales volumes, which subsequently decrease to stabilized levels. Typically, our new restaurants have stabilized sales after approximately 26 to 52 weeks of operation, at which time the restaurant's sales typically begin to grow on a consistent basis. However, we cannot assure you that this will occur for future restaurant openings. In new markets, the length of time before average sales for new restaurants stabilize is less predictable and can be longer as a result of our limited knowledge of these markets and consumers' limited awareness of our brand. In addition, our average restaurant revenue and same store sales may not increase at the rates achieved over the past several years, if at all. Our ability to operate new restaurants profitably and increase average restaurant revenue and same store sales will depend on many factors, some of which are beyond our control, including:

- consumer awareness and understanding of our brand;
- general economic conditions, which can affect restaurant traffic, local labor costs and prices we pay for the food products and other supplies we use;
- changes in consumer preferences and discretionary spending;
- difficulties obtaining or maintaining adequate relationships with distributors or suppliers in new markets;
- increases in prices for commodities, including beef and other proteins;
- inefficiency in our labor costs as our staff gains experience;
- competition, either from our competitors in the restaurant industry or our own restaurants;
- temporary and permanent site characteristics of new restaurants;
- changes in government regulation; and
- other unanticipated increases in costs, any of which could give rise to delays or cost overruns.

If our new restaurants do not perform as planned, our business and future prospects could be harmed. In addition, an inability to achieve our expected average restaurant revenue would have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Our sales growth and ability to achieve profitability could be adversely affected if same store sales are less than we expect.

Our ability to increase the level of same store sales, which reflect the change in year-over-year sales for restaurants in the accounting period following 18 months of operations, will affect our sales growth and will continue to be a critical factor affecting our ability to generate profits because the restaurant contribution margin on same store sales increases is generally

[Table of Contents](#)

higher than the restaurant contribution on new restaurant sales. Our ability to increase same store sales depends in part on our ability to successfully implement our initiatives to increase sales. It is possible such initiatives will not be successful, that we will not achieve our target same store sales growth or that the change in same store sales could be negative, which may cause a decrease in sales growth and our ability to achieve profitability that would have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. See the section entitled “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations-Key Performance Indicators-Same Store Sales Growth.”

Our long-term success depends in part on our ability to effectively identify and secure appropriate sites for new restaurants.

We intend to develop new restaurants in our existing markets, expand our footprint into adjacent markets and selectively enter into new markets. In order to build new restaurants, we must first identify markets where we can enter or expand our footprint, taking into account numerous factors, including the location of our current restaurants, local economic trends, population density, area demographics and geography. Then we must secure appropriate restaurant sites, which is one of our biggest challenges. There are numerous factors involved in identifying and securing an appropriate restaurant site, including:

- evaluating size of the site, traffic patterns, local retail, residential and business attractions and infrastructure that will drive high levels of customer traffic and sales;
- competition in new markets, including competition for restaurant sites;
- financial conditions affecting developers and potential landlords, such as the effects of macro-economic conditions and the credit market (including the potential for rising interest rates), which could lead to these parties delaying or canceling development projects (or renovations of existing projects), in turn reducing the number of appropriate restaurant sites available;
- developers and potential landlords obtaining licenses or permits for development projects on a timely basis;
- proximity of potential restaurant sites to existing restaurants;
- anticipated commercial, residential and infrastructure development near the potential restaurant site; and
- availability of acceptable lease terms and arrangements.

Given the numerous factors involved, we may not be able to successfully identify and secure attractive restaurant sites in existing, adjacent or new markets, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

The minimum wage, particularly in California, continues to increase and is subject to factors outside of our control.

We have a substantial number of hourly employees who are paid wage rates based on the applicable federal, state or local minimum wage, and increases in the minimum wage will increase our labor costs.

On July 1, 2014, the State of California (where most of our restaurants are located) increased its minimum wage to \$9.00 per hour (from \$8.00 per hour), and it increased to \$10.00 per hour on January 1, 2016. On March 31, 2016, the California Legislature passed legislation which was designed to raise the statewide minimum wage gradually until it reaches \$15.00 per hour in 2022 and it was signed into law on April 4, 2016. Under the new California law, minimum wage increased to \$10.50 per hour on January 1, 2017 and to \$11.00 per hour on January 1, 2018, and then will increase by an additional dollar per hour each calendar year through 2022 when it reaches \$15.00 per hour. Based on our current number of restaurants in California, this is expected to impact 373 restaurants in California of which 252 are company-operated and 121 are franchise-operated.

In addition, in September 2015, the Los Angeles County Board of Supervisors approved increases to the minimum wage to \$15.00 per hour by 2020 with the first phase of the wage increase to \$10.50 effective on July 1, 2016, followed by an increase to \$12.00 per hour on July 1, 2017, \$13.25 on July 1, 2018, and \$14.25 on July 1, 2019 until it reaches \$15.00 per hour on July 1, 2020. Also, in June 2016, the Los Angeles City Council approved a sick paid leave ordinance to provide six days of paid sick leave per year, with carry-over of 72 hours, effective July 1, 2016. These local ordinances impacted 25 company-owned restaurants and eight franchise-owned restaurants in the City of Los Angeles and in the unincorporated areas of the County of Los Angeles.

On March 14, 2016, the Pasadena City Council adopted an ordinance to increase Pasadena’s minimum wage. Beginning on July 1, 2016, employers with 26 or more employees must pay a minimum wage of \$10.50 per hour to all employees who work at least 2 hours per week within Pasadena’s geographic bounds. The minimum wage increased to \$12.00 per hour on July 1, 2017, and will increase to \$13.25 per hour on July 1, 2018. This local ordinance impacted two company-operated restaurants.

[Table of Contents](#)

On June 7, 2016, San Diego voters voted in favor of an ordinance to increase San Diego's minimum wage rate and allow employees working within the San Diego city limits to earn one hour of paid sick leave for every 30 hours worked. The San Diego City Council certified this minimum wage increase on July 11, 2016 with the increase taking effect on July 11, 2016. Under this ordinance, for any employee who works at least two hours within San Diego city limits, minimum wage increased to \$10.50 per hour on July 11, 2016, \$11.50 per hour in 2017 and beginning 2019, the minimum wage rate will increase annually to an amount that corresponds to the prior year's increase, if any, in the cost of living. In addition, the ordinance provides up to five days of paid sick leave and allows unused sick leave to be carried over to the following year. This ordinance impacted three company-operated restaurants and two franchise-operated restaurants.

On November 8, 2016, Arizona voters voted in favor to increase the state minimum wage to \$10.00 per hour effective January 1, 2017 (from \$8.05 per hour) and to allow employees to earn one hour of paid sick leave for every 30 hours worked effective July 1, 2017. The minimum wage increased to \$10.50 per hour in 2018 and will increase to \$11.00 per hour in 2019 and \$12.00 per hour in 2020. The law provides up to five days of paid sick leave per year. The new law impacted three company-operated restaurants and 33 franchise-operated restaurants.

On January 1, 2017, Santa Monica voters approved a sick paid leave ordinance to provide 72 hours of paid sick leave per year, effective January 1, 2018. This local ordinance impacted one company-operated restaurant.

Other municipalities may set minimum wages above the applicable federal or state standards. The federal minimum wage has been \$7.25 per hour since July 24, 2009. Additional federally-mandated, state-mandated or locally mandated minimum wages may be raised in the future. Furthermore, on July 1, 2015, the Healthy Workplaces, Healthy Families Act of 2014 went into effect for California employees, which provides up to three days of paid sick leave for employees who work more than 30 days within a year. We may be unable to increase our menu prices in order to pass future increased labor costs on to our customers, in which case our margins would be negatively affected, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. In addition, if our menu prices are increased to cover increased labor costs, the higher prices could adversely affect sales and thereby reduce our margins and profitability.

Changes in food and supply costs or failure to receive frequent deliveries of food ingredients and other supplies could have an adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Our profitability depends in part on our ability to anticipate and react to changes in food and supply costs, and our ability to maintain our menu depends in part on our ability to acquire ingredients that meet specifications from reliable suppliers. Shortages or interruptions in the availability of certain supplies caused by unanticipated demand, problems in production or distribution, food contamination, inclement weather or other conditions could adversely affect the availability, quality and cost of our ingredients, which could harm our operations. Any increase in the prices of the food products most critical to our menu, such as beef, beverage syrup, chicken, cheese, french fries, tortillas, taco shells, fresh produce, soybean oil and other proteins, could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. Particularly, the cost of ground beef, our largest commodity expenditure and the only commodity that accounts for more than 10% of our total food and paper costs, increased significantly several years ago as a result of a reduction in the U.S. cattle supply, coupled with an increase in world demand for beef. The market for beef is particularly volatile and is subject to extreme price fluctuations due to seasonal shifts, climate conditions, the price of feed, industry demand, energy demand, relative strength of the U.S. dollar and other factors. Although we try to manage the impact that these fluctuations have on our operating results, we remain susceptible to increases in food costs as a result of factors beyond our control, such as general economic conditions, potential cross-border taxes or tariffs, seasonal fluctuations, weather conditions, demand, food safety concerns, generalized infectious diseases, product recalls and government regulations. For instance, in recent years, our cost of eggs increased materially due to the impact of the avian flu which infected much of the domestic egg laying flock and created a temporary but significant reduction in supply. Additionally, a substantial volume of produce and other items are procured from Mexico and other countries. Any new or increased import duties, tariffs or taxes, or other changes in U.S. trade or tax policy, could result in higher food and supply costs that would adversely impact our financial results. Therefore, material increases in the prices of the ingredients most critical to our menu, particularly ground beef, could adversely affect our operating results or cause us to consider changes to our product delivery strategy and adjustments to our menu pricing.

We have contracts with a limited number of suppliers for the food and supplies of our restaurants. If any of our suppliers perform inadequately, or our supply relationships are disrupted for any reason, there could be a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations or cash flows. Although we often enter into contracts for the purchase of food products and supplies, we do not have long-term contracts for the purchase of all such food products and supplies. As a result, we may not be able to anticipate or react to changing food costs by adjusting our purchasing practices or menu prices, which could cause our operating results to deteriorate. If we cannot replace or engage suppliers who meet our specifications in a short period of time, that could increase our expenses and cause shortages of food and other items at our restaurants, which

[Table of Contents](#)

could cause a restaurant to remove items from our menu. If that were to happen, affected restaurants could experience significant reductions in sales during the shortage or thereafter, if customers change their dining habits as a result. In addition, although we provide modestly priced food, we may choose not to, or may be unable to, pass along commodity price increases to consumers. These potential changes in food and supply costs could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Our profitability depends in part on our and our franchisees' ability to maintain consistent quality menu items and prices, which in turn significantly depends upon our ability to acquire food and paper products from reliable sources in accordance with our specifications on a timely basis. Shortages or interruptions in the supply of food and paper products caused by unanticipated demand, problems in production or distribution, contamination of food products, an outbreak of diseases impacting various proteins, inclement weather or other conditions could materially adversely affect the availability, quality and cost of ingredients, which would adversely affect our business, financial condition, results of operations and cash flows. We do not control the businesses of our vendors, suppliers and distributors and our efforts to specify and monitor the standards under which they perform may not be successful.

We rely on only one company to distribute substantially all of our products to company-operated and franchise-operated restaurants. Failure to receive timely deliveries of food or other supplies could result in a loss of revenue and materially and adversely impact our operations.

One company distributes substantially all of the products we receive from suppliers to company-operated and franchise-operated restaurants. If that distributor or any supplier fails to perform as anticipated or seeks to terminate agreements with us, or if there is any disruption in any of our distribution relationships for any reason, our business, financial condition, results of operations and cash flows could be materially adversely affected. If we or our franchisees must temporarily close a restaurant or remove popular items from a restaurant's menu, that restaurant may experience a significant reduction in revenue during the time affected by the shortage and thereafter if our customers change their dining habits as a result.

Additionally, any changes we may make to the services we obtain from our vendors, or new vendors we employ, may disrupt our operations. These disruptions could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Failure to manage our growth effectively could harm our business and operating results.

A portion of our growth plan includes opening new restaurants. If our expansion is accelerated greatly, our existing restaurant management systems, financial and management controls and information systems may be inadequate to support our planned expansion. Managing any such growth effectively will require us to continue to enhance these systems, procedures and controls and to hire, train and retain managers and team members. We may not respond quickly enough to the changing demands that our expansion will impose on our management, restaurant teams and existing infrastructure, which could harm our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Negative publicity relating to one of our restaurants, including one of our franchise-operated restaurants, could reduce sales at some or all of our other restaurants.

Our success is dependent in part upon our ability to maintain and enhance the value of our brand, consumers' connection to our brand and positive relationships with our franchisees. We may, from time to time, be faced with negative publicity relating to food quality, public health concerns, restaurant facilities, customer complaints or litigation alleging illness or injury, health inspection scores, integrity of our or our suppliers' food processing, employee relationships or other matters, regardless of whether the allegations are valid or whether we are held to be responsible. The negative impact of adverse publicity relating to one restaurant may extend far beyond the restaurant or franchise involved to affect some or all of our other restaurants. The risk of negative publicity is particularly great with respect to our franchise-operated restaurants because we are limited in the manner in which we can regulate them, especially on a real-time basis. The considerable expansion in the use of social media over recent years can further amplify any negative publicity that could be generated by such incidents.

Additionally, employee claims against us based on, among other things, wage and hour violations, discrimination, harassment or wrongful termination may also create negative publicity that could adversely affect us and divert our financial and management resources that would otherwise be used to benefit the future performance of our operations. A significant increase in the number of these claims or an increase in the number of successful claims would have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. See Note 17, *Commitments and Contingencies*, in the notes to the consolidated financial statements. Consumer demand for our products and our brand's value could diminish significantly if any such incidents or other matters create negative publicity or otherwise erode consumer confidence in us or our products, which

[Table of Contents](#)

would likely result in lower sales and could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Our expansion into new markets may present increased risks.

We may open restaurants in markets where we have little or no operating experience. Restaurants we open in any new markets may take longer to reach expected sales and profit levels on a consistent basis and may have higher construction, occupancy or operating costs than restaurants we open in existing markets, thereby affecting our overall profitability. New markets may have competitive conditions, consumer tastes and discretionary spending patterns that are more difficult to predict or satisfy than our existing markets. We may need to make greater investments than we originally planned in advertising and promotional activity in new markets to build brand awareness. We may find it more difficult in new markets to hire, motivate and keep qualified employees who share our vision, passion and culture. We may also incur higher costs from entering new markets if, for example, we assign regional managers to manage comparatively fewer restaurants than in more developed markets. As a result, these new restaurants may be less successful or may achieve AUVs at a slower rate. We may not be able to successfully develop critical market presence for our brand in new geographical markets, as we may be unable to find and secure attractive locations, build name recognition or attract new customers. Inability to fully implement or failure to successfully execute our plans to enter new markets could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Governmental regulation may adversely affect our ability to open new restaurants or otherwise adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.

We are subject to various federal, state and local regulations, including those relating to building and zoning requirements and those relating to the preparation and sale of food. The development and operation of restaurants depends to a significant extent on the selection and acquisition of suitable sites, which are subject to zoning, land use, environmental, traffic and other regulations and requirements. Our restaurants are also subject to state and local licensing and regulation by health, sanitation, food and occupational safety and other agencies. We may experience material difficulties or failures in obtaining the necessary licenses, approvals or permits for our restaurants, which could delay planned restaurant openings or affect the operations at our existing restaurants. In addition, stringent and varied requirements of local regulators with respect to zoning, land use and environmental factors could delay or prevent development of new restaurants in particular locations.

We are subject to the U.S. Americans with Disabilities Act (the "ADA") and similar state laws that give civil rights protections to individuals with disabilities in the context of employment, public accommodations and other areas, including our restaurants. We may in the future have to modify restaurants by adding access ramps or redesigning certain architectural fixtures, for example, to provide service to or make reasonable accommodations for disabled persons. The expenses or capital outlays associated with these modifications could be material.

Our operations are also subject to the U.S. Occupational Safety and Health Act, which governs worker health and safety, the U.S. Fair Labor Standards Act, which governs such matters as minimum wages and overtime, and a variety of similar federal, state and local laws that govern these and other employment law matters. We and our franchisees may also be subject to lawsuits from employees, the U.S. Equal Employment Opportunity Commission or others alleging violations of federal and state laws regarding workplace and employment matters, discrimination and similar matters, and we have been a party to such matters in the past. In addition, federal, state and local proposals related to paid sick leave or similar matters could, if implemented, have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

There is a new food safety regulation of certain food establishments in the United States, where compliance with the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (the "FDA") Hazard Analysis and Risk-based Preventative Controls for Human Foods ("HARPC") regulation is required.

HARPC refers to a management system in which food safety is addressed through the analysis and control of potential hazards from production, procurement and handling, to manufacturing, distribution and consumption of the finished product. Many states have required restaurants to develop and implement HARPC systems, and the United States government continues to expand the sectors of the food industry that must adopt and implement HARPC programs. For example, the Food Safety Modernization Act (the "FSMA"), signed into law in January 2011, granted the the FDA authority regarding the safety of the entire food system, including through increased inspections and mandatory food recalls. Although restaurants are specifically exempted from or not directly implicated by some of these relatively new requirements, we anticipate that the requirements may impact our industry. Additionally, our suppliers may initiate or otherwise be subject to food recalls that may impact the availability of certain products, result in adverse publicity or require us to take actions that could be costly for us or otherwise impact our business.

[Table of Contents](#)

The impact of current laws and regulations, the effect of future changes in laws or regulations that impose additional requirements and the consequences of litigation relating to current or future laws and regulations, or our inability to respond effectively to significant regulatory or public policy issues, could increase our compliance and other costs of doing business and, therefore, have an adverse effect on our results of operations. Failure to comply with the laws and regulatory requirements of federal, state and local authorities could result in, among other things, revocation of required licenses, administrative enforcement actions, fines and civil and criminal liability. In addition, certain laws, including the ADA, could require us to expend significant funds to make modifications to its restaurants if we fail to comply with applicable standards. Compliance with the aforementioned laws and regulations can be costly and can increase our exposure to litigation or governmental investigations or proceedings, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Food safety and foodborne illness concerns could have an adverse effect on our business.

We have a vigorous food safety program in our restaurants designed to meet local and state regulations that we continue to update, optimize and strengthen. We have established in our nearly 54 year history, systems and standards with our suppliers and in our restaurants to ensure the safety of our food for our guests.

We cannot guarantee that our internal controls and training will be fully effective in preventing all food safety issues at our restaurants, including any occurrences of foodborne illnesses such as salmonella, Norovirus, E. coli and hepatitis A. In addition, there is no guarantee that our franchise restaurants will maintain the high levels of internal controls and training we require at company-operated restaurants. New illnesses resistant to our current precautions may develop in the future, or diseases with long incubation periods could arise, that could give rise to claims or allegations on a retroactive basis.

Furthermore, we bulk source for the system and we and our franchisees rely on our third-party suppliers, making it difficult to monitor food safety compliance and increasing the risk that foodborne illness could affect multiple locations rather than a single restaurant. We do our best to vet out our sources, however, given this, some foodborne illness could be caused by third-party suppliers and transporters outside of our control.

One or more instances of foodborne illness in any of our restaurants or markets or related to food products we sell could negatively affect our restaurant revenue nationwide if highly publicized on national media outlets or through social media. This risk exists even if it were later determined that the illness was wrongly attributed to us. A number of other restaurant chains have experienced incidents related to foodborne illnesses that have had a material adverse effect on their operations. The occurrence of a similar incident at one or more of our restaurants and negative publicity or public speculation about an incident, could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

We could be party to litigation that could distract management, increase our expenses or subject us to material monetary damages or other remedies.

Our customers from time to time file complaints or lawsuits against us alleging we caused an illness or injury they suffered at or after a visit to our restaurants, or that we have problems with food quality or operations. We also have been subject to a variety of other claims arising in the ordinary course of its business, including personal injury claims, contract claims and claims alleging violations of federal and state law regarding workplace and employment matters, equal opportunity, harassment, discrimination and similar matters, including administrative charges, single-plaintiff lawsuits, class actions, and other types of actions. We could become subject to class actions or other lawsuits related to any of these or from different types of matters in the future. Such claims may result in the payment of substantial damages by us. Regardless of whether any claims brought against us are valid, or whether we are ultimately held liable, claims may be expensive to defend and may divert time and resources away from our operations and hurt our performance. A judgment in excess of our insurance coverage for any claims could materially and adversely affect our financial condition and results of operations. Any adverse publicity resulting from the claims, or even from threatened claims, may also materially and adversely affect our reputation, which in turn could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

In addition, the restaurant industry has been subject to a growing number of claims based on the nutritional content of food products sold and disclosure and advertising practices. We may also be subject to this type of proceeding in the future and, even if it is not, publicity about these matters (particularly directed at the fast casual or traditional quick service segments of the industry) may harm our reputation and could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Compliance with environmental laws may negatively affect our business.

We are subject to federal, state and local laws and regulations concerning waste disposal, pollution, protection of the environment, and the presence, discharge, storage, handling, release and disposal of, and exposure to, hazardous or toxic substances. These environmental laws provide for significant fines and penalties for noncompliance and liabilities for remediation, sometimes without regard to whether the owner or operator of the property knew of, or was responsible for, the release or presence of hazardous toxic substances. Third parties may also make claims against owners or operators of properties for personal injuries and property damage associated with releases of, or actual or alleged exposure to, such hazardous or toxic substances at, on or from our restaurants. We are aware of contamination from a release of hazardous materials by a previous owner or operator at two of our leased properties. We do not believe that we contributed to the contamination at these properties. The appropriate state agencies have been notified and these issues are being handled without disruption to our business. Environmental conditions relating to releases of hazardous substances at a prior, existing or future restaurant could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. Further, environmental laws, and the administration, interpretation and enforcement thereof, are subject to change and may become more stringent in the future, each of which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Changes in economic conditions and other unforeseen conditions, particularly in the markets in which we operate, could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

The restaurant industry depends on consumer discretionary spending. The United States in general or the specific markets in which we operate may suffer from depressed economic activity, recessionary economic cycles, higher fuel or energy costs, low consumer confidence, high levels of unemployment, reduced home values, increases in home foreclosures, investment losses, personal bankruptcies, reduced access to credit, increased interest rates, or other economic factors that may affect consumer discretionary spending. Average restaurant revenue could decline if consumers choose to dine out less frequently or reduce the amount they spend on meals while dining out. Negative economic conditions might cause consumers to make long-term changes to their discretionary spending behavior, including dining out less frequently on a permanent basis, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

For example, the recession from late 2007 to mid-2009 reduced consumer confidence to historic lows, impacting the public's ability and desire to spend discretionary dollars as a result of job losses, home foreclosures, significantly reduced home values, investment losses, bankruptcies and reduced access to credit. If the economy experiences another significant decline, our business, results of operations and ability to comply with the terms of our credit agreement could be materially adversely affected and may result in a deceleration of the number and timing of new restaurant openings by us and our franchisees, as well as a potential deterioration in customer traffic or a reduction in average check size which would negatively impact our revenues and our profitability and could result in reductions in staff levels, additional impairment charges and potential restaurant closures.

Adverse weather and natural or man-made disasters in the markets in which we operate could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Adverse weather conditions in states in which we operate, or in the future may operate, could have a disproportionate impact on our overall results of operations. In particular, our business is significantly concentrated in Southern California, and as a result, we could be disproportionately affected by adverse weather specific to this market. Adverse weather conditions and prolonged or severe inclement weather may also impact customer traffic at our restaurants, and, in more severe cases, cause temporary restaurant closures, sometimes for prolonged periods. Most of our restaurants have outdoor seating, and the effects of adverse weather may impact the use of these areas and may negatively impact our revenue. In addition, natural or man-made disasters occurring in the markets in which we operate, such as terrorist attacks, tornadoes, earthquakes, hurricanes, floods, droughts, fires or other natural or man-made disasters, could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations, as such events could result in restaurant closures for an extended duration and lower customer traffic at our restaurants. If restaurant revenue decreases, our profitability could decline as we spread fixed costs across a lower level of sales. Reductions in staff levels, asset impairment charges and potential restaurant closures could result from prolonged negative same store sales, which would have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Our business is geographically concentrated in Southern California, and we could be negatively affected by conditions specific to that region.

Our company-operated and franchise-operated restaurants in Southern California generated, in the aggregate, approximately 77% and 78% of our revenue for both the years ended January 2, 2018 and January 3, 2017, respectively. During the recent economic crisis and recession, our business was materially adversely affected by a decrease in revenues from these restaurants due to adverse economic conditions in Southern California, including increased unemployment, declining home prices and increased foreclosures. In addition, there is the potential for catastrophic events such as local strikes, increases in energy prices, fires, earthquakes, explosions or other natural or man-made disasters which could materially adversely affect our business. The incidence and severity of catastrophes are inherently unpredictable and our losses from catastrophes could be substantial. Adverse changes in demographic, unemployment, economic or regulatory conditions in Southern California or the State of California as a whole, including but not limited to enforcement policies for and changes in immigration law, have had and may continue to have material adverse effects on our business. As of December 2017, unemployment in California was 4.2% compared to the U.S. unemployment rate of 4.1%. We believe increases in unemployment will have a negative impact on traffic in our restaurants. As a result of our concentration in this market, we will be disproportionately affected by any adverse economic conditions in this market compared to other national chain restaurants.

The challenging restaurant environment may affect our franchisees, with adverse consequences to us.

We rely in part on our franchisees and the manner in which they operate their locations to develop and promote our business. Due to the continuing challenging restaurant environment it is possible that some franchisees could file for bankruptcy or become delinquent in their payments to us, which could have a material adverse effect on our business due to loss or delay in payments of royalties, information technology (“IT”) support service fees, contributions to our advertising funds, and other fees. Our top 12 franchisees accounted for approximately 56.7% and 56.3% of our total franchise revenue for the years ended January 2, 2018 and January 3, 2017, respectively, and the top 20 franchisees accounted for approximately 68.9% and 68.7% of total franchise revenue for the years ended January 2, 2018 and January 3, 2017, respectively. Bankruptcies by our franchisees could prevent us from terminating their franchise agreements so that we can offer their territories to other franchisees, thereby negatively impacting our market share and operating results as we may have fewer well-performing restaurants, and adversely impact our ability to attract new franchisees.

Franchisees may not have access to the financial or management resources that they need to open the restaurants contemplated by their agreements with us, or be able to find suitable sites on which to develop them. Franchisees may not be able to negotiate acceptable lease or purchase terms for restaurant sites, obtain the necessary permits and government approvals or meet construction schedules. Any of these problems could slow our growth and limit our franchise revenue. Additionally, our franchisees typically depend on financing from banks and other financial institutions, which may not always be available to them under acceptable terms, in order to construct and open new restaurants. For these reasons, franchisees operating under development agreements may not be able to meet the new restaurant opening dates required under those agreements. Also, we sublease certain restaurants to certain existing franchisees. If any such franchisees cannot meet their financial obligations under their subleases, or otherwise fail to honor or default under the terms of their subleases, we would be financially obligated under a master lease and could be materially adversely affected.

Although we have developed criteria to evaluate and screen prospective developers and franchisees, it cannot be certain that the developers and franchisees we select will have the business acumen or financial resources necessary to open and operate successful franchises in their franchise areas, and state franchise laws may limit our ability to terminate or modify these franchise arrangements. Moreover, franchisees may not successfully operate restaurants in a manner consistent with our standards and requirements, or may not hire and train qualified managers and other restaurant personnel. The failure of developers and franchisees to open and operate franchises successfully could have a material adverse effect on us, our reputation, our brand and our ability to attract prospective franchisees and could materially adversely affect our business, financial condition, results of operations and cash flows.

We have limited control with respect to the operations of our franchisees, which could have a negative impact on our business.

Franchisees are independent business operators and are not our employees and we do not exercise control over the day-to-day operations of their restaurants. We provide training and support to franchisees, and set and monitor operational standards, but the quality of franchise-operated restaurants may be diminished by any number of factors beyond our control. Consequently, franchisees may not successfully operate restaurants in a manner consistent with our standards and requirements, or may not hire, train and retain qualified managers and other restaurant personnel. If franchisees do not operate to our expectations, our

[Table of Contents](#)

image and reputation, and the image and reputation of other franchisees, may suffer materially and system-wide sales could decline significantly.

Franchisees, as independent business operators, may from time to time disagree with us and our strategies regarding the business or our interpretation of our respective rights and obligations under the franchise agreement. This may lead to disputes, including potential litigation, with our franchisees and we expect such disputes to occur from time to time in the future as we continue to offer franchises. To the extent we have such disputes or litigation, the attention, time and financial resources of our management and our franchisees will be diverted from our restaurants, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations and cash flows.

New information or attitudes regarding diet and health could result in changes in regulations and consumer consumption habits, which could have an adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Regulations and consumer eating habits may change as a result of new information or attitudes regarding diet and health. Such changes may include responses to scientific studies on the health effects of particular food items or federal, state and local regulations that impact the ingredients and nutritional content of the food and beverages we offer. The success of our restaurant operations is dependent, in part, upon our ability to effectively respond to changes in any consumer attitudes or health regulations and our ability to adapt our menu offerings to trends in food consumption, especially fast-moving trends. If consumer health regulations or consumer eating habits change significantly, we may choose or be required to modify or delete certain menu items, which may adversely affect the attractiveness of our restaurants to new or returning customers. While we generally find that changes in consumer eating habits occur gradually, providing us with sufficient time to adapt our restaurant concept accordingly, changes in consumer eating habits can occur rapidly, often in response to published research or study information, which puts additional pressure on us to adapt quickly. To the extent we are unwilling or unable to respond with appropriate changes to our menu offerings in an efficient manner, it could materially affect consumer demand and have an adverse impact on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Government regulation and consumer eating habits may impact our business as a result of changes in attitudes regarding diet and health or new information regarding the adverse health effects of consuming certain menu offerings. These changes have resulted in, and may continue to result in, laws and regulations requiring us to disclose the nutritional content of our food offerings, and they have resulted, and may continue to result in, laws and regulations affecting permissible ingredients and menu offerings. A number of counties, cities and states, including California, have enacted menu labeling laws requiring multi-unit restaurant operators to disclose to consumers certain nutritional information, or have enacted legislation restricting the use of certain types of ingredients in restaurants, which laws may be different or inconsistent with requirements under the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act of 2010 (the “PPACA”), which establishes a uniform, federal requirement for certain restaurants to post nutritional information on their menus. Specifically, the PPACA requires chain restaurants with 20 or more locations operating under the same name and offering substantially the same menus to publish the total number of calories of standard menu items on menus and menu boards, along with a statement that puts this calorie information in the context of a total daily calorie intake.

We may not be able to effectively respond to changes in consumer health perceptions, comply with further nutrient content disclosure requirements or adapt our menu offerings to align with trends in eating habits, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Failure to maintain our corporate culture and changes in consumer recognition of our brand as we grow could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

We believe that a critical component to our success has been our corporate culture. We have invested substantial time and resources in building our team. As we continue to grow, we may find it difficult to maintain the innovation, teamwork, passion and focus on execution that we believe are important aspects of our corporate culture. Any failure to preserve our culture could negatively affect our future success, including our ability to retain and recruit personnel and to effectively focus on and pursue our corporate objectives. If we cannot maintain our corporate culture as we grow, it could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

In addition, our future results depend on various factors, including local market acceptance of our restaurants and consumer recognition of the quality of our food and operations. Our failure to receive and sustain such local market acceptance and consumer recognition could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

The effect of changes to healthcare laws in the United States, or the repeal of existing healthcare laws, may increase the number of employees who choose to participate in our healthcare plans, which may significantly increase our healthcare costs and negatively impact our financial results.

In 2010, the PPACA was signed into law in the United States to require health care coverage for many uninsured individuals and expand coverage to those already insured. The PPACA requires us to offer healthcare benefits to all full-time employees (including full-time hourly employees) that meet certain minimum requirements of coverage and affordability, or face penalties. We began to offer such benefits on January 1, 2015 to all eligible employees, and may incur substantial additional expense due to organizing and maintaining the plan which we anticipate will be more expensive on a per person basis and will extend to an increased number of employees who we anticipate may elect to obtain coverage through this healthcare plan which we subsidize in part. If we fail to offer such benefits, or the benefits we elect to offer do not meet the applicable requirements, we may incur penalties. Since the PPACA also requires individuals to obtain coverage or face individual penalties, employees who are currently eligible but elect not to participate in our healthcare plans may find it more advantageous to do so when such individual penalties increase in size. It is also possible that by making changes or failing to make changes in the healthcare plans offered by us, we will become less competitive in the market for our labor. Finally, maintaining the requirements of the PPACA may impose additional administrative costs. The continued costs and other effects of these healthcare requirements cannot be determined with certainty, but they may significantly increase our healthcare coverage costs and could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

It is possible that legislation will be passed by the U.S. Congress and signed into law that repeals the PPACA, in whole or in part, and/or introduces a new form of health care reform. It is unclear at this point what the scope of such legislation would be and when it would become effective. Because of the uncertainty surrounding possible replacement health care reform legislation, we cannot predict with any certainty the likely impact of the PPACA's potential repeal or the adoption of any other health care reform legislation on our business, financial condition or results of operations. Whether or not there is alternative health care legislation enacted in the United States, there is likely to be significant disruption to the health care market in the coming months and years and the costs of our health care expenditures may increase.

We depend on our senior management team and other key employees, and the loss of one or more key personnel or an inability to attract, hire, integrate and retain highly skilled personnel could have an adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Our success depends largely upon the continued services of our key executives. We also rely on our leadership team in setting our strategic direction, operating our business, identifying, recruiting and training key personnel, identifying expansion opportunities, arranging necessary financing and leading general and administrative functions. From time to time, there may be changes in our executive management team resulting from the hiring or departure of executives, which could disrupt our business. The loss of one or more of our executive officers or other key employees could have a serious adverse effect on our business. The replacement of one or more of our executive officers or other key employees would involve significant time and expense and may significantly delay or prevent the achievement of our business objectives.

To continue to execute our growth strategy, we also must identify, hire and retain highly skilled personnel. We might not be successful in maintaining our corporate culture and continuing to attract and retain qualified personnel. Failure to identify, hire and retain necessary key personnel could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

If we or our franchisees face labor shortages, unionization activities, labor disputes or increased labor costs, it could negatively impact our growth and could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Labor is a primary component in the cost of operating our company-operated and franchise-operated restaurants. If we face labor shortages or increased labor costs because of lower levels of unemployment, increased competition for employees, higher employee turnover rates, increases in the federal, state or local minimum wage or other employee benefits costs (including costs associated with paid sick leave, health insurance coverage and workers compensation), our operating expenses could increase and our growth could be negatively impacted. In addition, our success depends in part upon our ability to attract, motivate and retain a sufficient number of well-qualified restaurant operators and management personnel, as well as a sufficient number of other qualified employees, including customer service and kitchen staff, to keep pace with our expansion schedule. In addition, restaurants have traditionally experienced relatively high employee turnover rates. Our inability to recruit or retain qualified employees, due to competition or lack of qualified applicants, may delay planned openings of new restaurants, result in higher labor costs or result in higher employee turnover in existing restaurants, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

[Table of Contents](#)

Although none of our employees are currently covered under collective bargaining agreements, if a significant number of our employees were to become unionized and collective bargaining agreement terms were significantly different from our current compensation arrangements, it could adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations. In addition, a labor dispute involving some or all of our employees may harm our reputation, disrupt our operations and reduce our revenue, and resolution of disputes may increase our costs.

Changes in employment laws may adversely affect our business.

Various federal, state and local labor laws govern the relationship with our employees and impact operating costs. These laws include employee classification as exempt or non-exempt for overtime and other purposes, minimum wage requirements, paid sick leave requirements, unemployment tax rates, workers' compensation rates, immigration status and other wage and benefit requirements. Significant additional government-imposed increases in the following areas could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations:

- minimum wages;
- mandatory health benefits;
- vacation accruals;
- paid leaves of absence, including paid sick leave; and
- tax reporting.

In addition, various states in which we operate are considering or have already adopted new immigration laws or enforcement programs, and the U.S. Congress and Department of Homeland Security from time to time considers and may implement changes to federal immigration laws, regulations or enforcement programs as well. Some of these changes may increase our obligations for compliance and oversight, which could subject us to additional costs and make our hiring process more cumbersome, or reduce the availability of potential employees. Although we require all workers to provide us with government-specified documentation evidencing their employment eligibility, some of our employees may, without our knowledge, be unauthorized workers. We currently participate in the "E-Verify" program, an Internet-based, free program run by the United States government to verify employment eligibility in all locations. However, use of the "E-Verify" program does not guarantee that we will properly identify all applicants who are ineligible for employment. Unauthorized workers are subject to deportation and may subject us to fines or penalties, and if any of our workers are found to be unauthorized we could experience adverse publicity that negatively impacts our brand and may make it more difficult to hire and keep qualified employees. Termination of a significant number of employees who were unauthorized employees may disrupt our operations, cause temporary increases in our labor costs as we train new employees and result in additional adverse publicity. We could also become subject to fines, penalties and other costs related to claims that we did not fully comply with all recordkeeping obligations of federal and state immigration compliance laws. These factors could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Our insurance programs, including high deductible insurance programs, may expose us to significant and unexpected costs and losses.

Given the nature of our operating environment, we are subject to workers' compensation and general liability claims. To mitigate a portion of these risks, we maintain insurance for individual claims in excess of deductibles per claim. We currently record a liability for our estimated cost of claims incurred and unpaid as of each balance sheet date. Our estimated liability is recorded on an undiscounted basis and includes a number of significant assumptions and factors, including historical trends, expected costs per claim, actuarial assumptions and current economic conditions. Our history of claims activity for all lines of coverage is closely monitored and liabilities are adjusted as warranted based on changing circumstances. It is possible, however, that our actual liabilities may exceed our estimates of loss. We may also experience an unexpectedly large number of claims that result in costs or liabilities in excess of our projections and therefore we may be required to record additional expenses. For these and other reasons, our self-insurance reserves could prove to be inadequate, resulting in liabilities in excess of our available insurance and self-insurance. If a successful claim is made against us and is not covered by our insurance or exceeds our policy limits, our business may be negatively and materially impacted.

We might require additional capital to support business growth, and this capital might not be available.

We intend to continue to make investments to support our business growth and might require additional funds to respond to business challenges or opportunities, including the need to open additional restaurants, develop new products and menu items or enhance our products and menu items, and enhance our operating infrastructure. Accordingly, we might need to engage in equity or debt financings to secure additional funds. If we raise additional funds through issuance of equity securities, our

Table of Contents

existing stockholders could suffer significant dilution, and any new equity securities we issue could have rights, preferences and privileges superior to those of holders of our common stock. Any debt financing secured by us in the future could involve restrictive covenants relating to our capital-raising activities and other financial and operational matters, which might make it more difficult for us to obtain additional capital and to pursue business opportunities, including potential acquisitions. Moreover, if we issue new debt securities, the debt holders would have rights senior to common stockholders to make claims on our assets. In addition, we might not be able to obtain additional financing on terms favorable to us, if at all. If we are unable to obtain adequate financing or financing on terms satisfactory to us when we require, our ability to continue to support our business growth and to respond to business challenges could be significantly limited.

The failure to comply with our debt covenants or the volatile credit and capital markets could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition.

Our ability to manage our debt is dependent on our level of positive cash flow from company-operated and franchise-operated restaurants, net of costs. The recent economic downturn negatively impacted our cash flows. Credit and capital markets can be volatile, which could make it more difficult for us to refinance existing debt or to obtain additional debt financings in the future. Such constraints could increase our costs of borrowing and could restrict our access to other potential sources of future liquidity. Our failure to comply with the debt covenants in our credit agreement or to have sufficient liquidity to make interest and other payments required by our debt could result in a default of such debt and acceleration of our borrowings which would have a material adverse effect on business and financial condition.

We have significant debt and if we are unable to repay our debt when it becomes due or comply with our obligations in the underlying credit agreement, our business, financial condition and results of operations could be materially harmed.

At January 2, 2018, we had total debt obligations of \$173.1 million (excluding any debt discount and deferred financing costs, and including capital lease obligations and deemed landlord financing liabilities), and \$78.8 million available for borrowings under our revolving credit facility. Our level of indebtedness could have significant effects on our business, such as:

- limiting our ability to borrow additional amounts to fund working capital, capital expenditures, acquisitions, debt service requirements, execution of our growth strategy and other purposes;
- requiring us to dedicate a portion of our cash flow from operations to pay interest on our debt, which would reduce availability of our cash flow to fund working capital, capital expenditures, potential acquisitions, execution of our growth strategy and other general corporate purposes;
- making us more vulnerable to adverse changes in general economic, industry and competitive conditions, in government regulation and in our business by limiting our ability to plan for and react to changing conditions;
- placing us at a competitive disadvantage compared with our competitors that have less debt; and
- exposing us to risks inherent in interest rate fluctuations and the risk of increased interest rates because our borrowings are at variable rates of interest, which could result in higher interest expense in the event of increases in interest rates.

We may not be able to generate sufficient cash flow from our operations to repay our indebtedness when it becomes due and to meet our other cash needs. If we are not able to pay our debts as they become due, we will be required to pursue one or more alternative strategies, such as selling assets, refinancing or restructuring our indebtedness or selling additional debt or equity securities. We may not be able to refinance our debt or sell additional debt or equity securities or sell our assets on favorable terms, if at all, and if we must sell our assets, we may negatively affect our ability to generate revenue.

Our credit agreement contains restrictive covenants that, among others, limit our ability to (i) pay dividends and make distributions and repurchase stock; (ii) engage in transactions with affiliates; (iii) create liens; (iv) incur indebtedness not under the credit agreement; (v) engage in sale-leaseback transactions; (vi) make investments; and (vii) sell or dispose of all or substantially all of our assets and engage in specified mergers or consolidations. In addition, our credit agreement contains certain financial covenants, including the maintenance of a consolidated total lease adjusted leverage ratio and a consolidated fixed charge coverage ratio. Our ability to borrow under our revolving credit agreement depends on our compliance with these financial covenants. Events beyond our control, including changes in general economic and business conditions, may affect our ability to meet these financial covenants. We cannot assure you that we will meet these financial covenants in the future, or that the lenders will waive any failure to meet these financial covenants.

We are subject to all of the risks associated with leasing space subject to long-term non-cancelable leases.

As of January 2, 2018, we only own real property underlying two company-operated restaurants and one franchise-operated restaurant. Payments under our operating leases account for a significant portion of our operating expenses and we expect that substantially all of the new restaurants we open in the future will also be leased. We are obligated under non-cancelable leases for our restaurants and our corporate headquarters. Our restaurant leases generally have an initial term of 15 to 20 years with up to four renewal options of five years each. Our restaurant leases generally require us to pay a proportionate share of real estate taxes, insurance, common area maintenance charges and other operating costs. Additional sites that we lease are likely to be subject to similar long-term non-cancelable leases. If an existing or future restaurant is not profitable, and we decide to close it, we may nonetheless be committed to perform our obligations under the applicable lease including, among other things, paying the base rent and real estate taxes for the balance of the lease term. During the fourth quarter of fiscal 2015, we closed twelve company-operated restaurants as previously planned. We recorded restaurant closure charges totaling \$4.5 million, offset by \$2.7 million related to the reclassification of lease related liabilities, for a net charge of \$1.8 million. The net charge of \$1.8 million and additional charges of \$0.2 million related to other prior restaurant closures or sublease income shortfalls are both included in restaurant closure charges, net on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income (loss) for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015. The charges for the 12 underperforming restaurants were based on (1) the estimated present value of the future lease obligations net of estimated sublease income, (2) a lease termination payment, (3) brokerage commissions, (4) post closure rent, utilities, property tax and common area maintenance charges, (5) unused food and paper that could not be redeployed, (6) WARN act and stay bonus payments to terminated employees, and (7) other direct costs associated with the closures. In addition, as each of our leases expire, we may fail to negotiate renewals, either on commercially acceptable terms or at all, which could cause us to pay increased occupancy costs or to close restaurants in desirable locations. These potential increased occupancy costs and closed restaurants could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

We may incur costs resulting from breaches of security of confidential consumer information related to our electronic processing of credit and debit card transactions.

A significant amount of our restaurant sales are by credit or debit cards. Other restaurants and retailers have experienced security breaches in which credit and debit card information has been stolen. We may in the future become subject to claims for purportedly fraudulent transactions arising out of the actual or alleged theft of credit or debit card information, and we may also be subject to lawsuits or other proceedings relating to these types of incidents. In addition, most states have enacted legislation requiring notification of security breaches involving personal information, including credit and debit card information. Any such claim or proceeding could cause us to incur significant unplanned expenses, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. Further, adverse publicity resulting from these allegations may have a material adverse effect on our business and results of operations.

We rely heavily on information technology, and any material failure, weakness, interruption or breach of security could prevent us from effectively operating our business.

We rely heavily on information systems, including point-of-sale processing in our restaurants, for management of our supply chain, payment of obligations, collection of cash, credit and debit card transactions and other processes and procedures. Our ability to efficiently and effectively manage our business depends significantly on the reliability and capacity of these systems. Our operations depend upon our ability to protect our computer equipment and systems against damage from physical theft, fire, power loss, telecommunications failure or other catastrophic events, as well as from internal and external security breaches, viruses and other disruptive problems. The failure of these systems to operate effectively, maintenance problems, upgrading or transitioning to new platforms, or a breach in security of these systems could result in delays in customer service and reduce efficiency in our operations. Remediation of such problems could result in significant, unplanned expense or capital investments.

Our current insurance may not provide adequate levels of coverage against claims.

Our current insurance policies may not be adequate to protect us from liabilities that we incur in our business. Additionally, in the future, our insurance premiums may increase, and we may not be able to obtain similar levels of insurance on reasonable terms, or at all. Any substantial inadequacy of, or inability to obtain, insurance coverage could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

There are types of losses we may incur that cannot be insured against or that we believe are not economically reasonable to insure. Such losses could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. We may

[Table of Contents](#)

not be able to maintain adequate directors' and officers' insurance. Failure to maintain adequate directors' and officers' insurance would likely adversely affect our ability to attract and retain qualified officers and directors.

Failure to obtain and maintain required licenses and permits or to comply with food control regulations could lead to the loss of our food service licenses and, thereby, harm our business.

The restaurant industry is subject to various federal, state and local government regulations, including those relating to the sale of food. Such regulations are subject to change from time to time. The failure to obtain and maintain these licenses, permits and approvals could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations. Typically, licenses must be renewed annually and may be revoked, suspended or denied renewal for cause at any time if governmental authorities determine that our conduct violates applicable regulations. Difficulties or failure to maintain or obtain the required licenses and approvals could adversely affect our existing restaurants and delay or result in our decision to cancel the opening of new restaurants, which would have a material adverse effect on our business.

Restaurant companies have been the target of class action lawsuits and other proceedings alleging, among other things, violations of federal and state workplace and employment laws. Proceedings of this nature are costly, divert management attention and, if successful, could result in our payment of substantial damages or settlement costs.

Our business is subject to the risk of litigation by employees, consumers, suppliers, franchisees, stockholders or others through private actions, class actions, administrative proceedings, regulatory actions or other litigation. The outcome of litigation, particularly class action and regulatory actions, is difficult to assess or quantify. In recent years, restaurant companies, including ours, have been subject to lawsuits, including class action lawsuits, alleging violations of federal and state laws regarding workplace and employment conditions, discrimination and similar matters. A number of these lawsuits have resulted in the payment of substantial damages by the defendants. Similar lawsuits have been instituted from time to time alleging violations of various federal and state wage and hour laws regarding, among other things, employee meal breaks, rest periods, overtime eligibility of managers and failure to pay for all hours worked. We have been a party to wage and hour and overtime eligibility of managers class action lawsuits in the past, and we presently face one wage and hour and one overtime eligibility of managers putative class action lawsuits in California state court.

In addition, from time to time, our customers file complaints or lawsuits against us alleging that we are responsible for some illness or injury they suffered at or after a visit to one of our restaurants, including actions seeking damages resulting from alleged food-borne illness or accidents in our restaurants. We also have been subject to claims from a former franchisee. We are also subject to a variety of other claims from third parties arising in the ordinary course of our business, including contract claims. The restaurant industry has also been subject to a growing number of claims that the menus and actions of restaurant chains have led to the obesity of certain of their customers. We may also be subject to lawsuits from our employees, the U.S. Equal Employment Opportunity Commission or others alleging violations of federal and state laws regarding workplace and employment conditions, discrimination and similar matters.

Regardless of whether any claims against us are valid or whether we are liable, claims may be expensive to defend and may divert time and money away from our operations. In addition, they may generate negative publicity, which could reduce customer traffic and sales. Although we maintain what we believe to be adequate levels of insurance, insurance may not be available at all or in sufficient amounts to cover any liabilities with respect to these or other matters. A judgment or other liability in excess of our insurance coverage for any claims or any adverse publicity resulting from claims could adversely affect our business and results of operations.

We could face liability from or as a result of our franchisees.

Various state and federal laws govern our relationship with our franchisees and our potential sale of a franchise. If we fail to comply with these laws, we could be liable for damages to franchisees and fines or other penalties. A franchisee or government agency may bring legal action against us based on the franchisee/franchisor relationship. Also, under the franchise business model, we may face claims and liabilities based on vicarious liability, joint-employer liability, or other theories or liabilities. All such legal actions not only could result in changes to laws, making it more difficult to appropriately support our franchisees and, consequently, impacting our performance, but, also, such legal actions could result in expensive litigation with our franchisees or government agencies that could adversely affect both our profits and our important relations with our franchisees. In addition, other regulatory or legal developments may result in changes to laws or the franchisor/franchisee relationship that could negatively impact the franchise business model and, accordingly, our profits.

Changes to accounting rules or regulations may adversely affect the reporting of our results of operations.

Changes to existing accounting rules, including the new lease standard issued in February 2016, or regulations may impact the reporting of our future results of operations or cause the perception that we are more highly leveraged. Other new accounting rules or regulations and varying interpretations of existing accounting rules or regulations have occurred and may occur in the future. For instance, the new lease standard will require lessees to capitalize operating leases in their financial statements in fiscal 2019. Such change will require us to record significant lease obligations on our balance sheet and make other changes to our financial statements. This and other future changes to accounting rules or regulations could have a material adverse effect on the reporting of our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Estimates are used in our analysis of property, fixtures and equipment or operating results at certain restaurant locations that may cause us to incur impairment charges on certain long-lived assets, which may adversely affect our results of operations.

In accordance with accounting guidance as it relates to the impairment of long-lived assets, we make certain estimates and projections with regard to individual restaurant operations, as well as our overall performance, in connection with our impairment analyses for long-lived assets. When impairment triggers are deemed to exist for any location, the estimated undiscounted future cash flows are compared to our carrying value. If the carrying value exceeds the undiscounted cash flows, an impairment charge equal to the difference between the carrying value and the fair value is recorded. The projections of future cash flows used in these analyses require the use of judgment and a number of estimates and projections of future operating results. If actual results differ from our estimates, additional charges for asset impairments may be required in the future. If future impairment charges are significant, this could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations.

Warrants are exercisable for our common stock, which would increase the number of shares eligible for future resale in the public market and result in dilution to our stockholders.

As of January 2, 2018, outstanding warrants to purchase an aggregate of 5,999,934 shares of our common stock are exercisable in accordance with the terms of the warrant agreement governing those securities. The exercise price of these warrants is \$11.50 per share, or approximately \$69.0 million in the aggregate for all shares underlying these warrants, assuming none of the warrants are exercised through “cashless” exercise. To the extent such warrants are exercised, additional shares of our common stock will be issued, which will result in dilution to the holders of our common stock and increase the number of shares eligible for resale in the public market. Sales of substantial numbers of such shares in the public market or the fact that such warrants may be exercised could adversely affect the market price of our common stock.

Unanticipated changes in effective tax rates or adverse outcomes resulting from examination of our income or other tax returns could adversely affect our financial condition and results of operations.

We will be subject to income taxes in the United States, and our domestic tax liabilities will be subject to the allocation of expenses in differing jurisdictions. Our future effective tax rates could be subject to volatility or adversely affected by a number of factors, including:

- changes in the valuation of our deferred tax assets and liabilities;
- expected timing and amount of the release of any tax valuation allowances;
- tax effects of stock-based compensation;
- costs related to intercompany restructurings;
- recently enacted significant tax reform or future changes in tax laws, regulations or interpretations thereof;
- lower than anticipated future earnings in jurisdictions where we have lower statutory tax rates and higher than anticipated future earnings in jurisdictions where we have higher statutory tax rates; or
- changes in the excess of the amount for financial reporting over the tax basis of an investment in a domestic subsidiary.

In addition, we may be subject to audits of our income, sales and other transaction taxes by U.S. federal and state authorities. Outcomes from these audits could have an adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

[Table of Contents](#)

Our stock price has been and may continue to be extremely volatile, and, as a result, you may not be able to resell your shares at or above the price you paid for them.

In recent years the stock market in general has been highly volatile. As a result, the market price and trading volume of our common stock is likely to be similarly volatile, and investors in our common stock may experience a decrease, which could be substantial, in the value of their stock, including decreases unrelated to our results of operations or prospects, and could lose part or all of their investment. The price of our common stock has been and could in the future be subject to wide fluctuations in response to a number of factors, including those described elsewhere in this proxy statement and others such as:

- variations in our operating performance and the performance of our competitors or restaurant companies in general;
- actual or anticipated fluctuations in our quarterly or annual operating results;
- publication of research reports by securities analysts about us or our competitors or our industry;
- the public's reaction to our press releases, our other public announcements and our filings with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC");
- our failure or the failure of our competitors to meet analysts' projections or guidance that we or our competitors may give to the market;
- additions and departures of key personnel;
- strategic decisions by us or our competitors, such as acquisitions, divestitures, spin-offs, joint ventures, strategic investments or changes in business strategy;
- the passage of legislation or other regulatory developments affecting us or our industry;
- speculation in the press or investment community;
- changes in accounting principles;
- terrorist acts, acts of war or periods of widespread civil unrest;
- alleged or actual occurrences of food-borne illnesses;
- alleged or actual occurrences of security breaches in which credit and debit card information has been stolen;
- natural disasters and other calamities; and
- changes in general market and economic conditions.

In the past, securities class action litigation has often been initiated against companies following periods of volatility in their stock price. This type of litigation could result in substantial costs and divert our management's attention and resources, and could also require us to make substantial payments to satisfy judgments or to settle litigation.

Our quarterly operating results may fluctuate significantly and could fall below the expectations of securities analysts and investors due to seasonality and other factors, some of which are beyond our control, resulting in a decline in our stock price.

Our quarterly operating results may fluctuate significantly because of several factors, including:

- the timing of new restaurant openings and related expense;
- restaurant operating costs for our newly-opened restaurants;
- labor availability and costs for hourly and management personnel;
- profitability of our restaurants, especially in new markets;
- changes in interest rates;
- increases and decreases in AUVs and same store sales growth;
- impairment of long-lived assets and any loss on restaurant closures;
- macroeconomic conditions, both nationally and locally;
- negative publicity relating to products we serve;
- changes in consumer preferences and competitive conditions;
- expansion to new markets;
- increases in infrastructure costs; and
- fluctuations in commodity prices.

[Table of Contents](#)

Seasonal factors, weather patterns and the timing of holidays cause our revenue to fluctuate from quarter to quarter. Our revenue per restaurant is typically slightly lower in the first quarter. Adverse weather conditions may also affect customer traffic. In addition, we have outdoor seating at most of our restaurants, and the effects of adverse weather may impact the use of these areas and may negatively impact our revenue.

The future issuance of additional common stock in connection with our incentive plan will dilute your stockholdings.

There are 3,300,000 shares of common stock reserved and authorized for issuance under our incentive plans. As of January 2, 2018, we had an aggregate of 1,361,986 shares of common stock available for grant for incentive plan issuance. We may issue all of these shares of common stock without any action or approval by our stockholders, subject to certain exceptions. Any common stock issued in connection with our incentive plan, the exercise of outstanding stock options, or otherwise would dilute the percentage ownership held by all other stockholders.

If securities or industry analysts do not publish research or reports about our business, or publish inaccurate or unfavorable research or reports about our business, our stock price and trading volume could decline.

The trading market for our common stock will, to some extent, depend on the research and reports that securities or industry analysts publish about us and our business. We do not have any control over these analysts. If one or more of the analysts who cover us downgrade our common stock or change their opinion on our common stock, our stock price would likely decline. If one or more of these analysts cease to cover us or fail to regularly publish reports on us, we could lose visibility in the financial markets, which could cause our stock price or trading volume to decline.

We will incur significant increased expenses and administrative burdens as a public company, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

We will face increased legal, accounting, administrative and other costs and expenses as a new public company that we did not incur as a private company. The Sarbanes-Oxley Act, including the requirements of Section 404, as well as rules and regulations subsequently implemented by the SEC, the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act and the rules and regulations promulgated and to be promulgated thereunder, the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board and NASDAQ, impose additional reporting and other obligations on public companies. Compliance with public company requirements has increased our costs and made some activities more time-consuming. A number of those requirements have required us to carry out activities we have not done previously. For example, we have created new board committees and adopted new internal controls and disclosure controls and procedures. In addition, we have incurred and will continue to incur additional expenses associated with our SEC reporting requirements and compliance under Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. Furthermore, if we identify any issues in complying with those requirements (for example, if we or our auditors identify a material weakness or significant deficiency in our internal control over financial reporting), we could incur additional costs rectifying those issues, and the existence of those issues could adversely affect us, our reputation or investor perceptions of us. It is also more expensive to obtain director and officer liability insurance. Risks associated with our status as a public company may make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified persons to serve on our board of directors or as executive officers. The additional reporting and other obligations imposed on us by these rules and regulations have and will continue to increase our legal and financial compliance costs. These increased costs will require us to divert a significant amount of time and money that we could otherwise use to expand our business and achieve our strategic objectives. Advocacy efforts by stockholders and third parties may also prompt additional changes in governance and reporting requirements, which could further increase our costs.

Because we have not paid or declared any cash dividends on our common stock, you may not receive any return on investment unless you sell your common stock for a price greater than that which you paid for it.

We may retain future earnings, if any, for future operations, expansion and debt repayment and have not historically paid any cash dividends. Any decision to declare and pay dividends as a public company in the future will be made at the discretion of our board of directors and will depend on, among other things, our results of operations, financial condition, cash requirements, contractual restrictions and other factors that our board of directors may deem relevant. In addition, our ability to pay dividends may be limited by covenants of any existing and future outstanding indebtedness we or our subsidiaries incur, including our senior secured credit facility. As a result, you may not receive any return on an investment in our common stock unless you sell our common stock for a price greater than that which you paid for it.

The JOBS Act permits “emerging growth companies” like us to take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies.

We qualify as an “emerging growth company” as defined in Section 2(a)(19) of the Securities Act, as modified by the JOBS Act. As such, we are eligible for and intend to take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies for as long as we continue to be an emerging growth company, including (i) the exemption from the auditor attestation requirements with respect to internal control over financial reporting under Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, (ii) the exemptions from say-on-pay, say-on-frequency and say-on-golden parachute voting requirements and (iii) reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements. We will remain an emerging growth company until the earliest of (i) the last day of the fiscal year in which the market value of our common stock that is held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of the second quarter of that fiscal year, (ii) the last day of the fiscal year in which we had total annual gross revenue of \$1.07 billion or more during such fiscal year (as indexed for inflation), (iii) the date on which we have issued more than \$1 billion in non-convertible debt in the prior three-year period or (iv) the last day of the fiscal year following the fifth anniversary of the date of the first sale of our common stock in our initial public offering.

We cannot predict if investors will find our common stock less attractive because we will rely on these exemptions. If some investors find our common stock less attractive as a result, there may be a less active trading market for our common stock and our stock price may be more volatile.

Failure to establish and maintain effective internal controls in accordance with Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act could have a material adverse effect on our business and stock price.

We are not currently required to comply with the rules of the SEC implementing Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and therefore are not required to make a formal assessment of the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting for that purpose. As a publicly traded company, we are required to comply with the SEC’s rules implementing Section 302 and 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, which require management to certify financial and other information in our quarterly and annual reports and provide an annual management report on the effectiveness of controls over financial reporting. Pursuant to the JOBS Act, our independent registered public accounting firm will not be required to attest to the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting until the later of the year we become a large accelerated filer or the date we are no longer an emerging growth company, which may be up to five full fiscal years following LAC’s initial public offering.

To comply with the requirements of being a public company, we are undertaking various actions, such as implementing new internal controls and procedures and hiring additional accounting or internal audit resources. In addition, we may identify material weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting that we may not be able to remediate in time to meet the applicable deadline imposed upon us for compliance with the requirements of Section 404.

If we identify weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting, are unable to comply with the requirements of Section 404 in a timely manner or assert that our internal control over financial reporting is effective, or if our independent registered public accounting firm is unable to express an opinion as to the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting, investors may lose confidence in the accuracy and completeness of our financial reports and the market price of our common stock could be negatively affected, and we could become subject to investigations by NASDAQ (the exchange on which our securities are listed), the SEC or other regulatory authorities, which could require additional financial and management resources.

Anti-takeover provisions contained in our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, as well as provisions of Delaware law, could impair a takeover attempt.

Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws contain provisions that could have the effect of delaying or preventing changes in control or changes in our management without the consent of our board of directors. These provisions include:

- a classified board of directors with three-year staggered terms, which may delay the ability of stockholders to change the membership of a majority of our board of directors;
- no cumulative voting in the election of directors, which limits the ability of minority stockholders to elect director candidates;
- the exclusive right of our board of directors to elect a director to fill a vacancy created by the expansion of the board of directors or the resignation, death, or removal of a director, which prevents stockholders from being able to fill vacancies on our board of directors;

Table of Contents

- the ability of our board of directors to determine whether to issue shares of preferred stock and to determine the price and other terms of those shares, including preferences and voting rights, without stockholder approval, which could be used to significantly dilute the ownership of a hostile acquirer;
- a prohibition on stockholder action by written consent, which forces stockholder action to be taken at a special meeting of our stockholders;
- the requirement that an annual meeting of stockholders may be called only by the chairman of the board of directors, the chief executive officer, or the board of directors, which may delay the ability of our stockholders to force consideration of a proposal or to take action, including the removal of directors;
- limiting the liability of, and providing indemnification to, our directors and officers;
- controlling the procedures for the conduct and scheduling of stockholder meetings;
- providing that directors may be removed prior to the expiration of their terms by stockholders only for cause; and
- advance notice procedures that stockholders must comply with in order to nominate candidates to our board of directors or to propose matters to be acted upon at a stockholders' meeting, which may discourage or deter a potential acquirer from conducting a solicitation of proxies to elect the acquirer's own slate of directors or otherwise attempting to obtain control of our board of directors.

These provisions, alone or together, could delay hostile takeovers and changes in control of the Company or changes in our management.

As a Delaware corporation, we are also subject to provisions of Delaware law, including Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law ("DGCL"), which prevents some stockholders holding more than 15% of our outstanding common stock from engaging in certain business combinations without approval of the holders of substantially all of our outstanding common stock. Any provision of our certificate of incorporation or bylaws or Delaware law that has the effect of delaying or deterring a change in control could limit the opportunity for our stockholders to receive a premium for their shares of our common stock, and could also affect the price that some investors are willing to pay for our common stock.

Table of Contents

ITEM 1B. Unresolved Staff Comments

None.

ITEM 2. Properties

Our restaurants are primarily free-standing or, to a much lesser extent, end-cap facilities. Ninety-nine percent of our restaurants feature a drive-thru. As of January 2, 2018, for all but two of the company-operated restaurants, we lease the land on which our restaurants are built. Leases generally have initial terms of 20 years, with two or four renewal terms of five years each. Most restaurant leases provide for a specified annual rent, although some call for additional or contingent rent. Generally, leases are “net leases” that require the restaurant to pay a pro rata share of property taxes, insurance and common area maintenance costs. As of January 2, 2018, we own five properties and currently operate restaurants on two of these properties and a franchisee operates a restaurant on one of these properties. In addition, we lease 310 properties for company-operated restaurants. As of January 2, 2018, our restaurant system consisted of 564 restaurants comprised of 312 company-operated restaurants and 252 franchise-operated restaurants located in 14 states throughout the United States, including one franchise located in Guam.

We lease our executive offices, consisting of approximately 37,500 square feet in Lake Forest, California, for a term expiring in 2026, with one option to extend the lease term for an additional five years. We believe our current office space is suitable and adequate for its intended purposes and provides opportunity for expansion. The following chart shows the number of restaurants in each of the states in which we operated as of January 2, 2018.

State	Company-Operated	Franchise-Operated	Total
California	252	121	373
Nevada	46	1	47
Arizona	3	33	36
Utah	—	32	32
Colorado	—	22	22
Georgia	6	5	11
New Mexico	—	9	9
Oregon	—	8	8
Idaho	—	7	7
Michigan	—	7	7
Oklahoma	5	—	5
Washington	—	3	3
Florida	—	2	2
South Carolina	—	1	1
Guam	—	1	1
Total	312	252	564

ITEM 3. Legal Proceedings

We are currently involved in various claims and legal actions that arise in the ordinary course of business. Although the results of litigation and claims can never be predicted with certainty, we do not believe that the ultimate resolution of these actions will have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, or financial condition. Regardless of the outcome, litigation can have an adverse impact on us because of defense and settlement costs, diversion of management resources and other factors.

In July 2013, a former Del Taco employee filed a purported class action complaint alleging that Del Taco has failed to pay overtime wages and has not appropriately provided meal breaks to its California general managers. On March 4, 2016, the Court denied class certification on the overtime and meal period claims. At that time, the Court granted class certification on the wage statement issue only. On October 30, 2017, the Court granted Del Taco's Motion to Decertify the Wage Statement Class. Thereafter, the parties settled the matter with the former Del Taco employee on an individual basis. As a result, the case was dismissed with prejudice in its entirety.

[Table of Contents](#)

In March 2014, a former Del Taco employee filed a purported class action complaint alleging that Del Taco has not appropriately provided meal breaks and failed to pay wages to its California hourly employees. Discovery is in process and Del Taco intends to assert all of its defenses to this threatened class action and the individual claims. Del Taco has several defenses to the action that it believes should prevent the certification of the class, as well as the potential assessment of any damages on a class basis. Legal proceedings are inherently unpredictable, and the Company is not able to predict the ultimate outcome or cost of the unresolved matter. However, based on management's current understanding of the relevant facts and circumstances, the Company does not believe that these proceedings give rise to a probable or estimable loss and should not have a material adverse effect on the Company's financial position, operations or cash flows.

The Company and its subsidiaries are parties to other legal proceedings incidental to their businesses, including claims alleging the Company's restaurants do not comply with the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990. In the opinion of management, based upon information currently available, the ultimate liability with respect to those other actions will not have a material effect on the operating results, cash flows or the financial position of the Company.

ITEM 4. Mine Safety Disclosures

Not applicable.

PART II

ITEM 5. *Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases*

Our common stock and warrants are currently quoted on NASDAQ under the symbols "TACO" and "TACOW," respectively. Through April 28, 2015, our common stock, warrants and units were quoted under the symbols "LEVY," "LEVYW" and "LEVYU," respectively. Upon consummation of the Business Combination, we separated our units, which were sold in our IPO, into their component securities of one share of common stock and one-half of one warrant, and the units ceased public trading.

The following table sets forth the high and low sales prices for shares of our common stock and warrants for the quarterly periods indicated:

	Common Stock		Warrants	
	High	Low	High	Low
Fiscal 2017:				
First Quarter	\$ 14.93	\$ 11.66	\$ 5.05	\$ 2.88
Second Quarter	\$ 14.14	\$ 11.58	\$ 4.25	\$ 3.25
Third Quarter	\$ 14.35	\$ 12.08	\$ 4.32	\$ 3.00
Fourth Quarter	\$ 15.99	\$ 11.60	\$ 5.60	\$ 2.64
Fiscal 2016:				
First Quarter	\$ 11.10	\$ 8.37	\$ 3.70	\$ 1.70
Second Quarter	\$ 10.78	\$ 8.89	\$ 2.71	\$ 1.71
Third Quarter	\$ 11.40	\$ 8.43	\$ 3.24	\$ 1.65
Fourth Quarter	\$ 15.32	\$ 10.75	\$ 5.70	\$ 2.85

 Holders

As of March 7, 2018, there were 18 holders of record of our common stock and 2 holders of record of our warrants. A number of our stockholders and warrant holders held their shares and warrants in street name and some shares and warrants are held of record by banks, brokers and other financial institutions; therefore, we believe there are substantially more beneficial owners of our common stock and warrants.

 Dividends

We have not declared or paid dividends on our common stock since we became a public company. Our board of directors re-evaluates this policy periodically. Any determination to pay cash dividends will be at the discretion of the board of directors and will be dependent upon our results of operations, financial condition, capital requirements, terms of our financing arrangements, and such other factors as the board of directors deems relevant. In addition, the amount of dividends we may pay is subject to the restricted payment provisions of our senior secured credit facility. See the Liquidity and Capital Resources section under Part II-Item 7. "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" for further information on the restricted payment provisions of our senior secured credit facility. Further, if we incur any additional indebtedness, our ability to declare dividends may be limited by restrictive covenants that we may agree to in connection therewith.

 Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities

There were no sales of unregistered equity securities during the fourth quarter of Fiscal 2017 .

On March 7, 2016, we announced that our Board of Directors authorized a share repurchase program under which we may purchase up to \$25.0 million in the aggregate of our common stock and warrants, which expires upon completion of the repurchase program, unless terminated earlier by the Board of Directors. On August 23, 2016, we announced the Board of Directors increased the repurchase program by \$25.0 million, to \$50.0 million. Purchases under the program may be made in open market or privately negotiated transactions. During the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 , we repurchased

[Table of Contents](#)

986,497 shares of common stock in open market transactions under the share repurchase program for an average price per share of \$12.41 for an aggregate cost of approximately \$12.3 million including incremental direct costs to acquire the shares. During the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018, we repurchased 424,439 warrants in open market transactions and privately negotiated transactions under the share repurchase program for an average price per share of \$3.72 for an aggregate cost of approximately \$1.6 million including incremental direct costs to acquire the warrants. As of January 2, 2018 (Successor), there was approximately \$20.9 million remaining under the share repurchase program. The amount and timing of additional purchases (if any) will depend upon a number of factors, including the price and availability of our common stock and warrants and general market conditions.

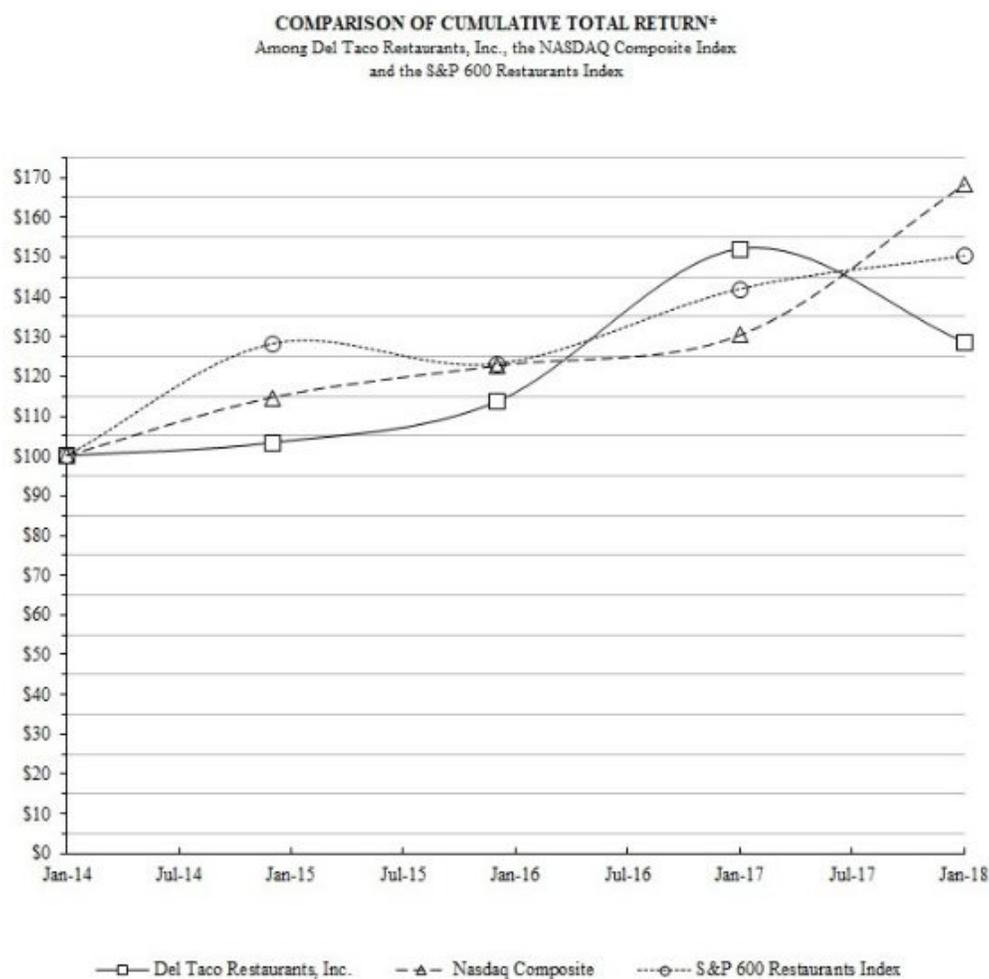
Of the 424,439 warrants purchased during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), 400,000 warrants were purchased from PW Acquisitions, LP, a related party, at \$3.75 per warrant, representing a 5% discount from the closing price of \$3.95 per warrant on the transaction date. A member of the Company's Board of Directors is the chief executive officer and managing member of the general partner of PW Acquisitions, LP.

The following table summarizes shares and warrants repurchased during the fourth fiscal quarter ended January 2, 2018 (Successor). The average price paid per share and warrant in column (b) below does not include the cost of brokerage fees or the incremental direct costs to acquire the shares.

	(a)		(b)		(c)		(d)
	Total number of shares/warrants purchased		Average price paid per share	Average price paid per warrant	Total number of shares purchased as part of publicly announced programs	Total number of warrants purchased as part of publicly announced programs	Maximum dollar value that may yet be purchased under these programs
Common Stock	Warrants						
September 13, 2017 - October 10, 2017	—	—	\$ —	\$ —	—	—	\$ 24,070,155
October 11, 2017 - November 7, 2017	84,566	9,658	\$ 12.57	\$ 3.41	84,566	9,658	\$ 22,974,227
November 8, 2017 - December 5, 2017	141,319	11,568	\$ 12.14	\$ 3.08	141,319	11,568	\$ 21,222,985
December 6, 2017 - January 2, 2018	23,325	2,027	\$ 12.00	\$ 3.08	23,325	2,027	\$ 20,936,842
Total	249,210	23,253					

Comparative Share Performance Graph

The following graph shows a comparison of cumulative total shareholder return, calculated on a dividend reinvested basis, for (1) the Company’s common stock, (2) the NASDAQ Composite, and (3) the S&P 600 Restaurants Index, for the period January 8, 2014 (the first day our common stock was traded following our initial public offering) through January 2, 2018. The graph assumes the value of the investment in our common stock and each index was \$100.00 on January 8, 2014 and that all dividends were reinvested. We have not paid any cash dividends and, therefore, the cumulative total return calculation for us is based solely upon stock price appreciation and not upon reinvestment of cash dividends. Note that historic stock price performance is not necessarily indicative of future stock price performance.



*\$100 invested on January 8, 2014 in stock or index, including reinvestment of dividends

	January 8, 2014	December 30, 2014	December 29, 2015	January 3, 2017	January 2, 2018
Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.	\$ 100.00	\$ 103.29	\$ 113.59	\$ 152.02	\$ 128.56
NASDAQ Composite	\$ 100.00	\$ 114.69	\$ 122.62	\$ 130.33	\$ 168.21
S&P 600 Restaurants Index	\$ 100.00	\$ 128.13	\$ 123.10	\$ 141.91	\$ 150.16

[Table of Contents](#)

ITEM 6. *Selected Financial Data*

	Successor ⁽¹⁾			Predecessor ⁽¹⁾		
	52 Weeks Ended ⁽²⁾	53 Weeks Ended ⁽²⁾	26 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended	52 Weeks Ended ⁽²⁾	
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017	December 29, 2015	June 30, 2015	December 30, 2014	December 31, 2013
(Amounts in thousands)						
Statement of Operations Data:						
Revenue:						
Company restaurant sales	\$ 452,148	\$ 434,064	\$ 206,939	\$ 200,676	\$ 380,800	\$ 356,306
Franchise revenue	16,464	15,676	7,328	6,693	12,973	12,515
Franchise sublease income	2,844	2,343	1,183	1,183	2,251	2,167
Total revenue	471,456	452,083	215,450	208,552	396,024	370,988
Operating expenses:						
Restaurant operating expenses:						
Food and paper costs	125,391	120,116	59,263	57,447	110,708	105,492
Labor and related expenses	145,012	135,725	61,448	61,120	116,920	108,788
Occupancy and other operating expenses	92,825	88,908	43,191	43,611	82,021	77,205
General and administrative	38,154	37,220	17,501	14,850	28,136	23,112
Depreciation and amortization	23,362	23,129	11,276	8,252	18,752	19,850
Occupancy and other - franchise subleases	2,608	2,207	1,140	1,109	2,145	2,073
Pre-opening costs	1,591	731	366	276	462	596
Impairment of long-lived assets	—	—	—	—	9,617	—
Restaurant closure charges, net	191	435	2,015	94	82	298
Loss (gain) on disposal of assets, net	1,075	312	3	99	(151)	209
Total operating expenses	430,209	408,783	196,203	186,858	368,692	337,623
Income from operations	41,247	43,300	19,247	21,694	27,332	33,365
Other expense (income), net:						
Interest expense	7,200	6,327	3,652	11,491	30,895	35,613
Other income	—	—	(220)	—	—	—
Transaction-related costs	—	731	12,972	7,255	1,936	—
Debt modification costs	—	—	78	139	1,241	4,178
Change in fair value of warrant liability	—	—	—	(35)	1,417	33
Total other expense, net	7,200	7,058	16,482	18,850	35,489	39,824
Income (loss) from operations before (benefit) provision for income taxes	34,047	36,242	2,765	2,844	(8,157)	(6,459)
(Benefit) provision for income taxes	(15,824)	15,329	112	740	1,098	80
Net income (loss)	\$ 49,871	\$ 20,913	\$ 2,653	\$ 2,104	\$ (9,255)	\$ (6,539)

[Table of Contents](#)

	Successor ⁽¹⁾			Predecessor ⁽¹⁾		
	52 Weeks Ended ⁽²⁾	53 Weeks Ended ⁽²⁾	26 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended	52 Weeks Ended ⁽²⁾	
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017	December 29, 2015	June 30, 2015	December 30, 2014	December 31, 2013
(Amounts in thousands)						
Consolidated Statement of Cash Flows Data:						
Net cash provided by operating activities	\$ 57,788	\$ 57,546	\$ 17,085	\$ 10,083	\$ 45,476	\$ 41,325
Net cash (used in) provided by investing activities	(40,689)	(47,654)	42,566	(15,284)	(18,068)	(19,997)
Net cash (used in) provided by financing activities	(19,335)	(11,291)	(49,457)	1,820	(24,926)	(19,527)

	Successor ⁽¹⁾			Predecessor ⁽¹⁾	
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017	December 29, 2015	December 30, 2014	December 31, 2013
(Amounts in thousands)					
Balance Sheet Data:					
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 6,559	\$ 8,795	\$ 10,194	\$ 8,553	\$ 6,071
Property and equipment, net ⁽³⁾	156,124	138,320	114,030	85,164	93,464
Total assets	742,324	727,157	703,572	549,319 ⁽⁴⁾	555,810 ⁽⁴⁾
Total debt, net ⁽⁵⁾	172,054	175,331	169,693	322,683 ⁽⁴⁾	330,476 ⁽⁴⁾
Total shareholders' equity	416,249	377,333	368,377	81,404	89,898

	Successor ⁽¹⁾			Predecessor ⁽¹⁾		
	52 Weeks Ended ⁽²⁾	53 Weeks Ended ⁽²⁾	26 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended	52 Weeks Ended ⁽²⁾	
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017	December 29, 2015	June 30, 2015	December 30, 2014	December 31, 2013
(Amounts in thousands)						
Other Operating Data (unaudited):						
Restaurant Contribution ⁽⁶⁾	\$ 88,920	\$ 89,315	\$ 43,037	\$ 38,498	\$ 71,151	\$ 64,821
As a % of Company Restaurant Sales	19.7%	20.6%	20.8%	19.2%	18.7%	18.2%
EBITDA ⁽⁷⁾	64,609	65,698	17,693	22,584	41,346	48,626
As a % of Total Revenue	13.7%	14.5%	8.2%	10.8%	10.4%	13.1%
Adjusted EBITDA ⁽⁷⁾	71,533	71,396	34,041	30,947	58,848	55,608
As a % of Total Revenue	15.2%	15.8%	15.8%	14.8%	14.9%	15.0%

- (1) As a result of the Business Combination, we are the acquirer for accounting purposes, and DTH is the acquiree and accounting predecessor. Our financial statement presentation distinguishes a "Predecessor" for DTH for periods prior to the Closing Date. We were subsequently re-named as Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. and are the "Successor" for periods after the Closing Date, which includes consolidation of DTH subsequent to the Business Combination on June 30, 2015.
- (2) We use a 52- or 53-week fiscal year ending on the Tuesday closest to December 31. Fiscal year 2017, fiscal year 2016, fiscal year 2015, fiscal year 2014 and fiscal year 2013 ended on January 2, 2018, January 3, 2017, December 29, 2015, December 30, 2014, and December 31, 2013, respectively. In a 52-week fiscal year, the first, second and third quarters each include 12 weeks of operations and the fourth quarter includes 16 weeks of operations; in a 53-week fiscal year, the first, second and third quarters each include 12 weeks of operations and the fourth quarter includes 17 weeks of operations. Approximately every six or seven years a 53-week fiscal year occurs. Fiscal year 2016 was a 53-week fiscal year. Fiscal year 2017, fiscal year 2015, fiscal year 2014, and fiscal year 2013 were 52-week fiscal years.
- (3) Property and equipment, net consists of land, buildings, restaurant and other equipment, leasehold improvements, buildings under capital leases and construction-in-progress, net of accumulated depreciation and amortization.
- (4) Deferred financing costs of \$0.7 million and \$0.9 million at December 30, 2014 and December 31, 2013, respectively, were reclassified from other assets to debt to conform to current year presentation.

Table of Contents

- (5) Total debt, net as of January 2, 2018, January 3, 2017 and December 29, 2015, consists of borrowings under our revolving credit facility, as well as capital lease obligations and deemed landlord financing liabilities. Total debt as of December 30, 2014 and December 31, 2013 consists of borrowings under DTH's senior credit facility and subordinated notes, as well as capital lease obligations and deemed landlord financing liabilities. The December 30, 2014 outstanding balance of the subordinated notes of \$111.2 million was paid in full on March 20, 2015. We refinanced our senior credit facility in August 2015. Refer to Note 8 in the notes to the consolidated financial statements for additional information.
- (6) Restaurant contribution is neither required by, nor presented in accordance with, United States generally accepted accounting principles ("U.S. GAAP"), and is defined as company restaurant sales less restaurant operating expenses. Restaurant contribution is a supplemental measure of operating performance of our restaurants and the calculation thereof may not be comparable to that reported by other companies.

Restaurant contribution has limitations as an analytical tool, and you should not consider it in isolation or as a substitute for analysis of our results as reported under U.S. GAAP. Management believes that restaurant contribution is an important tool for investors because it is a widely-used metric within the restaurant industry to evaluate restaurant-level productivity, efficiency and performance. Management uses restaurant contribution as a key metric to evaluate the profitability of incremental sales at our restaurants, to evaluate restaurant performance across periods and to evaluate restaurant financial performance compared with competitors. See the Item 7. "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K for a discussion of restaurant contribution and other key performance indicators.

A reconciliation of company restaurant sales to restaurant contribution is provided below:

(Amounts in thousands)	Successor			Predecessor		
	52 Weeks Ended	53 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended	52 Weeks Ended	
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017	December 29, 2015	June 30, 2015	December 30, 2014	December 31, 2013
Company restaurant sales	\$ 452,148	\$ 434,064	\$ 206,939	\$ 200,676	\$ 380,800	\$ 356,306
Restaurant operating expenses	363,228	344,749	163,902	162,178	309,649	291,485
Restaurant contribution	\$ 88,920	\$ 89,315	\$ 43,037	\$ 38,498	\$ 71,151	\$ 64,821

- (7) EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA are neither required by, nor presented in accordance with GAAP, and are included in this annual report because they are key metrics used by management and our board of directors to assess financial performance. EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA are frequently used by analysts, lenders and other interested parties to evaluate companies in our industry.

EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA are not U.S. GAAP measures of financial performance or liquidity and should not be considered as alternatives to net income (loss) as a measure of financial performance or cash flows from operations as measures of liquidity, or any other performance measure derived in accordance with U.S. GAAP. Adjusted EBITDA should not be construed as an inference that future results will be unaffected by unusual or non-recurring items.

Additionally, EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA are not intended to be measures of free cash flow for management's discretionary use, as they do not reflect tax payments, debt service requirements, capital expenditures, company restaurant openings and certain other cash costs that may recur in the future, including, among other things, cash requirements for working capital needs and cash costs to replace assets being depreciated and amortized. Management compensates for these limitations by relying on U.S. GAAP results in addition to using EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA supplementally. Our measures of EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA are not necessarily comparable to similarly titled captions of other companies due to different methods of calculation.

A reconciliation of net income (loss) to EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA is set forth below:

[Table of Contents](#)

(Amounts in thousands)	Successor			Predecessor		
	52 Weeks Ended	53 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended	52 Weeks Ended	
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017	December 29, 2015	June 30, 2015	December 30, 2014	December 31, 2013
Net income (loss)	\$ 49,871	\$ 20,913	\$ 2,653	\$ 2,104	\$ (9,255)	\$ (6,539)
Non-GAAP adjustments:						
(Benefit) provision for income taxes	(15,824)	15,329	112	740	1,098	80
Interest expense	7,200	6,327	3,652	11,491	30,895	35,613
Depreciation and amortization	23,362	23,129	11,276	8,249	18,608	19,472
EBITDA	64,609	65,698	17,693	22,584	41,346	48,626
Stock-based compensation expense (a)	4,876	4,096	1,498	532	954	1,290
Loss (gain) on disposal of assets, net (b)	1,075	312	3	99	(151)	209
Impairment of long-lived assets (c)	—	—	—	—	9,617	—
Restaurant closure charges, net (d)	191	435	2,015	94	82	298
Amortization of favorable and unfavorable lease assets and liabilities, net (e)	(809)	(607)	(364)	3	144	378
Debt modification costs (f)	—	—	78	139	1,241	4,178
Transaction-related costs (g)	—	731	12,972	7,255	1,936	—
Change in fair value of warrant liability (h)	—	—	—	(35)	1,417	33
Pre-opening costs (i)	1,591	731	366	276	462	596
Insurance reserves adjustment (j)	—	—	—	—	1,800	—
Other income (k)	—	—	(220)	—	—	—
Adjusted EBITDA	\$ 71,533	\$ 71,396	\$ 34,041	\$ 30,947	\$ 58,848	\$ 55,608

- (a) Includes non-cash, stock-based compensation.
- (b) Loss (gain) on disposal of assets, net includes the loss or gain on disposal of assets related to sales-leaseback transactions, sales, retirements and replacement or write-off of leasehold improvements, furniture, fixtures or equipment in the ordinary course of business, net of amortization of deferred gains on assets sales associated with sale-leaseback transactions, gains or losses recorded associated with the sale of company-operated restaurants to franchisees and gains from disposal of assets related to eminent domain.
- (c) Includes costs related to impairment of long-lived assets.
- (d) Includes costs related to future obligations associated with the closure or net sublease shortfall of a restaurant, partially offset by sublease income from leases which are treated as deemed landlord financing.
- (e) Includes amortization of favorable lease assets and unfavorable lease liabilities.
- (f) Includes costs associated with debt refinancing transactions in April 2013, April 2014, March 2015 and August 2015.
- (g) Includes costs related to the offer to exchange the Company's common stock for each outstanding warrant in August 2016, the strategic sale process which commenced during 2014 and resulted in the March 2015 Stock Purchase Agreement with the Levy Newco Parties and the June 2015 Business Combination consummated pursuant to the Merger Agreement, and costs related to the secondary offering of common stock completed in October 2015.
- (h) Relates to fair value adjustments to the warrants to purchase shares of common stock of DTH that had been issued to certain of DTH's equity shareholders, all of which were exchanged for shares of common stock of DTH on March 20, 2015.
- (i) Pre-opening costs consist of costs directly associated with the opening of new restaurants and incurred prior to opening, including restaurant labor, supplies, cash and non-cash rent expense and other related pre-opening costs. These are generally incurred over the three to five months prior to opening.
- (j) Includes a \$1.8 million increase in fiscal 2014 in workers' compensation expense due to higher payments and reserves related to underlying claims activity.
- (k) Gain of \$0.2 million recorded in fiscal 2015 based on the amount of the liquidating distribution received in excess of our investment in four public partnerships. See Note 2, *Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies*, in the notes to the consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K.

ITEM 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

The following discussion and analysis of financial condition and results of operations should be read in conjunction with the consolidated financial statements and related notes thereto included elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. In addition to historical information, this discussion and analysis contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties such as the number of restaurants we intend to open, possible stock and warrant repurchases and estimates of our effective tax rates that could cause actual results to differ materially from Del Taco management's expectations. Factors that could cause such differences are discussed in "Cautionary Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements" and Item 1A. Risk Factors included in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. We assume no obligation to update any of these forward-looking statements.

As a result of the Business Combination (as defined in Note 1 to the consolidated financial statements included in this annual report on Form 10-K), we are the acquirer for accounting purposes, and Del Taco Holdings, Inc. ("DTH") is the acquiree and accounting predecessor. Our financial statement presentation distinguishes a "Predecessor" for DTH for periods prior to the Closing Date. We are the "Successor" for periods after the Closing Date, which includes consolidation of DTH subsequent to the Business Combination on June 30, 2015. The application of acquisition accounting for the Business Combination significantly affected certain assets, liabilities and expenses. As a result, financial information as of January 2, 2018 and January 3, 2017 and for the fifty-two weeks and fifty-three weeks ended January 2, 2018 and January 3, 2017, respectively, may not be comparable to Del Taco's financial information for the fifty-two weeks ended December 29, 2015, which includes Del Taco's Predecessor financial information for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015. Therefore, we did not combine certain financial information for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 with Del Taco's Predecessor financial information for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 for comparison purposes. We have combined our same store sales, company restaurant sales, franchise revenue, franchise sublease income, food and paper costs, labor and related expenses, general and administrative expenses, occupancy and other – franchise subleases, pre-opening costs, restaurant closure charges and loss on disposal of assets, net for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 with Del Taco's Predecessor same store sales, company restaurant sales, franchise revenue, franchise sublease income, food and paper costs, labor and related expenses, general and administrative expenses, occupancy and other – franchise subleases, pre-opening costs, restaurant closure charges and loss on disposal of assets, net for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015. Same store sales, company restaurant sales, franchise revenue, franchise sublease income, food and paper costs, labor and related expenses, general and administrative expenses, occupancy and other – franchise subleases, pre-opening costs, restaurant closure and loss on disposal of assets, net were not affected by acquisition accounting. Refer to Notes 2 and 3 to the consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K for additional information on the acquisition accounting for the Business Combination.

Fiscal Year

We operate on a 52- or 53-week fiscal year ending on the Tuesday closest to December 31 for financial reporting purposes. Fiscal year 2017 is the 52-week period ended January 2, 2018 ("Fiscal 2017"). Fiscal year 2016 is the 53-week period ended January 3, 2017 ("Fiscal 2016"). Fiscal year 2015 is the 52-week period ended December 29, 2015 ("Fiscal 2015"). For Fiscal 2017, the Company's financial statements reflect the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor). For Fiscal 2016, the Company's financial statements reflect the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor). For Fiscal 2015, the Company's financial statements reflect the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor).

Overview

We are a nationwide operator and franchisor of restaurants featuring fresh and fast cuisine, including both Mexican inspired and American classic dishes. As of January 2, 2018, we have 564 Del Taco restaurants, a majority of these in the Pacific Southwest. In each of our restaurants, our food is made to order in working kitchens. We serve our customers fresh and high-quality food typical of fast casual restaurants but with the speed, convenience and value associated with traditional quick service restaurants ("QSRs"). With attributes of both a fast casual restaurant and a QSR — a combination we call QSR+ — we occupy a place in the restaurant market distinct from our competitors. With a menu designed to appeal to a wide variety of budgets and tastes and recently updated interior and exterior designs across most of our entire system, we believe that we are poised for growth, operating within the fastest growing segment of the restaurant industry, the limited service restaurant ("LSR") segment. With an average system check of \$7.41 during Fiscal 2017, we offer a compelling value proposition relative to both QSR and fast casual peers.

Highlights and Trends

Same Store Sales

Same store sales growth reflects the change in year-over-year sales for the same store base. We include a restaurant in the same store base in the accounting period following its 18 th full month of operations and exclude restaurant closures. Same store sales growth for the 53rd week was calculated by comparing it to the “like week” in the prior year. The following table shows the same store sales growth for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018, the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 and the fifty-two weeks ended December 29, 2015, respectively:

	<u>52 Weeks Ended</u> <u>January 2, 2018</u>	<u>53 Weeks Ended</u> <u>January 3, 2017</u>	<u>52 Weeks Ended</u> <u>December 29, 2015</u>
Company-operated same store sales	4.0%	4.7%	6.4%
Franchise-operated same store sales	4.6%	4.9%	6.2%
System-wide same store sales	4.3%	4.8%	6.3%

The increase in company-operated same store sales in the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 was driven by an increase in average check size of 3.8% and an increase in traffic of 0.2% compared to the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 . The increase in company-operated same store sales in the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 was driven by an increase in average check size of 4.5% and an increase in traffic of 0.2% compared to the fifty-two weeks ended December 29, 2015 . The increase in company-operated same store sales in the fifty-two weeks ended December 29, 2015 was driven by an increase in average check size of 4.8% and an increase in traffic of 1.6% compared to the fifty-two weeks ended December 30, 2014.

Restaurant Development

Del Taco restaurant counts at the end of the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 , the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 and the fifty-two weeks ended December 29, 2015 are as follows:

	<u>52 Weeks Ended</u> <u>January 2, 2018</u>	<u>53 Weeks Ended</u> <u>January 3, 2017</u>	<u>52 Weeks Ended</u> <u>December 29, 2015</u>
Company-operated restaurant activity:			
Beginning of period	310	297	304
Openings	12	8	6
Closures	(6)	(1)	(13)
Purchased from franchisee	1	6	—
Sold to franchisee	(5)	—	—
Restaurants at end of period	312	310	297
Franchise-operated restaurant activity:			
Beginning of period	241	247	243
Openings	8	5	6
Closures	(1)	(5)	(2)
Restaurants sold to Company	(1)	(6)	—
Restaurants purchased from Company	5	—	—
Restaurants at end of period	252	241	247
Total restaurant activity:			
Beginning of period	551	544	547
Openings	20	13	12
Closures	(7)	(6)	(15)
Restaurants at end of period	564	551	544

Since 2012, we have focused on repositioning our brand, increasing brand awareness, re-imagining our restaurants, strengthening operational capabilities and refinancing indebtedness to build a foundation for future organic and new unit growth. New restaurant development is expected to contribute to our growth strategy. We plan to open an estimated 25 to 28 system-wide restaurants in Fiscal 2018. From time to time, we and our franchisees may close restaurants.

Restaurant Re-Imaging

We and our franchisees commenced the Ambience Shake Up (ASU) re-imaging program in 2012 and, as of the date of this Form 10-K, substantially all of our system restaurants feature our current image through a re-image or new prototype design, including all 312 restaurants that are company-operated. The ASU remodeling program involved a use of cash and impacted net property and depreciation line items on the consolidated balance sheets and statements of comprehensive income (loss), among others. The cost of the ASU restaurant remodels varied depending on the scope of work required, but on average the company-operated investment was \$45,000 per restaurant. We believe the ASU remodeling program is an important element of our strategy that has led to higher system restaurant sales and a strengthened brand.

Key Performance Indicators

In assessing the performance of our business, management utilizes a variety of financial and performance measures. These key measures include company restaurant sales, same store sales, company-operated average unit volumes, restaurant contribution and restaurant contribution margin, number of new restaurant openings, EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA.

Company Restaurant Sales

Company restaurant sales consists of sales of food and beverages in company-operated restaurants net of promotional allowances, employee meals and other discounts. Company restaurant sales in any period is directly influenced by the number of operating weeks in such period, the number of open restaurants, same store sales and per restaurant sales.

Seasonal factors and the timing of holidays cause revenue to fluctuate from quarter to quarter. Revenue per restaurant is typically lower in the first quarter due to reduced January traffic. As a result of seasonality, quarterly and annual results of operations and key performance indicators such as company restaurant sales and same store sales may fluctuate.

Same Store Sales

We regularly monitor company, franchise and total system same store sales. Same store sales growth reflects the change in year-over-year sales for the comparable company, franchise and total system restaurant base. We include a restaurant in the same store base in the accounting period following its 18th full month of operations and exclude restaurant closures. As of January 2, 2018, January 3, 2017, and December 29, 2015, there were 293, 298 and 288 restaurants, respectively, in the comparable company-operated restaurant base. As of January 2, 2018, January 3, 2017, and December 29, 2015, there were 239, 230 and 237 restaurants, respectively, in the comparable franchise-operated restaurant base. This measure highlights the performance of existing restaurants as the impact of new restaurant openings is excluded. Same store sales growth can be generated by an increase in the number of transactions and/or by increases in the average check resulting from a shift in menu mix and/or higher prices resulting from new products, promotions or menu price increases.

Company-Operated Average Unit Volumes

We measure company-operated average unit volumes ("AUVs") on both a weekly and an annual basis. Weekly AUVs are calculated by dividing the sales from comparable company-operated restaurants over a seven day period from Wednesday to Tuesday by the number of comparable restaurants. Annual AUVs are calculated by dividing sales for the trailing 52-week period for all company-operated restaurants that are in the comparable base by the total number of restaurants in the comparable base for such period. This measurement allows management to assess changes in consumer traffic and spending patterns at our company-operated restaurants and the overall performance of the restaurant base.

Restaurant Contribution and Restaurant Contribution Margin

Restaurant contribution and restaurant contribution margin are neither required by, nor presented in accordance with U.S GAAP. Restaurant contribution is defined as company restaurant sales less restaurant operating expenses, which are food and paper costs, labor and related expenses and occupancy and other operating expenses. Restaurant contribution margin is defined as restaurant contribution as a percentage of company restaurant sales. Restaurant contribution and restaurant contribution margin are supplemental measures of operating performance of restaurants and the calculations thereof may not be comparable to those reported by other companies. Restaurant contribution and restaurant contribution margin have limitations as analytical tools, and you should not consider them in isolation or as substitutes for analysis of results as reported under U.S. GAAP. Management believes that restaurant contribution and restaurant contribution margin are important tools for investors because they are widely-used metrics within the restaurant industry to evaluate restaurant-level productivity, efficiency and performance. Management uses restaurant contribution and restaurant contribution margin as key performance indicators to evaluate the profitability of incremental sales at Del Taco restaurants, to evaluate restaurant performance across periods and to

[Table of Contents](#)

evaluate restaurant financial performance compared with competitors. See the heading entitled "Management's Use of Non-GAAP Financial Measures" for the reconciliation of restaurant contribution to company restaurant sales.

Number of New Restaurant Openings

The number of restaurant openings reflects the number of new restaurants opened by us and our franchisees during a particular reporting period. Before a new restaurant opens, we and our franchisees incur pre-opening costs, as described below. Some new restaurants open with an initial start-up period of higher than normal sales volumes, which subsequently decrease to stabilized levels. Typically new restaurants experience normal inefficiencies in the form of higher food and paper, labor and other direct operating expenses and, as a result, restaurant contribution margins are generally lower during the start-up period of operation. Typically, the average start-up period after which new company restaurant sales and restaurant operating expenses normalize is approximately 26 to 52 weeks. In new markets, the length of time before average company restaurant sales and restaurant operating expenses for new restaurants stabilize is less predictable and can be longer as a result of limited knowledge of these markets and consumers' limited awareness of our brand. When we enter new markets, we may be exposed to start-up times that are longer and restaurant contribution margins that are lower than typical historical experience, and these new restaurants may not be profitable and their sales performance may not follow historical patterns.

EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA

EBITDA represents net income (loss) before interest expense, (benefit) provision for income taxes, depreciation and amortization. Adjusted EBITDA represents net income (loss) before interest expense, (benefit) provision for income taxes, depreciation, amortization and items that we do not consider representative of ongoing operating performance, as identified in the reconciliation table below.

EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA as presented in this annual report are supplemental measures of performance that are neither required by, nor presented in accordance with U.S. GAAP. EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA are not measurements of financial performance under U.S. GAAP and should not be considered as alternatives to net income (loss), income from operations or any other performance measures derived in accordance with U.S. GAAP or as alternatives to cash flow from operating activities as a measure of liquidity. In addition, in evaluating EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA, you should be aware that in the future we may incur expenses or charges such as those added back to calculate EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA. Our presentation of EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA should not be construed as an inference that future results will be unaffected by unusual or nonrecurring items.

EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA have limitations as analytical tools, and you should not consider them in isolation, or as substitutes for analysis of results as reported under U.S. GAAP. Some of these limitations include but are not limited to:

- (i) they do not reflect cash expenditures, or future requirements for capital expenditures or contractual commitments;
- (ii) they do not reflect changes in, or cash requirements for, working capital needs;
- (iii) they do not reflect the significant interest expense, or the cash requirements necessary to service interest or principal payments, on debt;
- (iv) although depreciation and amortization are non-cash charges, the assets being depreciated and amortized will often have to be replaced in the future, and EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA do not reflect any cash requirements for such replacements;
- (v) they do not adjust for all non-cash income or expense items that are reflected in the statements of cash flows;
- (vi) they do not reflect the impact of earnings or charges resulting from matters we consider not to be indicative of ongoing operations; and
- (vii) other companies in the industry may calculate these measures differently than we do, limiting their usefulness as comparative measures.

We compensate for these limitations by providing specific information regarding the U.S. GAAP amounts excluded from such non-GAAP financial measures. We further compensate for the limitations in the use of non-GAAP financial measures by presenting comparable U.S. GAAP measures more prominently.

We believe EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA facilitate operating performance comparisons from period to period by isolating the effects of some items that vary from period to period without any correlation to core operating performance or that vary widely among similar companies. These potential differences may be caused by variations in capital structures (affecting interest expense), tax positions (such as the impact on periods or changes in effective tax rates or net operating losses) and the

[Table of Contents](#)

age and book depreciation of facilities and equipment (affecting relative depreciation expense). We also present EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA because (i) we believe these measures are frequently used by securities analysts, investors and other interested parties to evaluate companies in their industry, (ii) we believe investors will find these measures useful in assessing our ability to service or incur indebtedness, and (iii) we use EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA internally as benchmarks to compare performance to that of competitors. See the heading entitled "Management's Use of Non-GAAP Financial Measures" for the reconciliation of EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA to net income (loss).

Key Financial Definitions

Company Restaurant Sales

Company restaurant sales represents sale of food and beverages in company-operated restaurants, net of promotional allowances, employee meals and other discounts. Company restaurant sales in any period is directly influenced by the number of operating weeks in such period, the number of open restaurants, same store sales performance and per restaurant sales.

Franchise Revenue

Franchise revenue consists of franchise royalty income from the franchisee and, to a lesser extent, renewal fees and franchise fees from franchise owners for new franchise restaurant openings. Franchise fees are recognized when all material obligations have been performed and conditions have been satisfied, typically when operations of a new franchise restaurant have commenced. The fees we collect upon signing a franchise agreement are deferred until operations have commenced.

Franchise Sublease Income

Franchise sublease income consists of rental income received from franchisees related to properties where we have subleased a leasehold interest to the franchisee but remain primarily liable to the landlord.

Food and Paper Costs

Food and paper costs include the direct costs associated with food, beverage and packaging of menu items. The components of food and paper costs are variable in nature, change with sales volume and are impacted by menu mix and are subject to increases or decreases based on fluctuations in commodity costs. Other important factors causing fluctuations in food and paper costs include seasonality, promotional activity and restaurant level management of food and paper waste. Food and paper are a significant expense and can be expected to grow proportionally as company restaurant sales grows.

Labor and Related Expenses

Labor and related expenses include all restaurant-level management and hourly labor costs, including wages, benefits, bonuses, workers' compensation expense, group health insurance, paid leave and payroll taxes. Like other expense items, we expect labor and related expenses to grow proportionately as company restaurant sales grows. Factors that influence fluctuations in labor and related expenses include minimum wage, paid sick leave and payroll tax legislation, health care and workers compensation costs and the performance of Del Taco restaurants.

Occupancy and Other Operating Expenses

Occupancy and other operating expenses include all other restaurant-level operating expenses, such as rent, utilities, restaurant supplies, repairs and maintenance, credit and debit card processing fees, advertising, insurance, common area maintenance, real estate taxes and other restaurant operating costs.

General and Administrative Expenses

General and administrative expenses are comprised of expenses associated with corporate and regional supervision functions that support the operations of existing restaurants and development of new restaurants, including compensation and benefits, travel expenses, stock-based compensation expenses, legal and professional fees, information systems, corporate office occupancy costs and other related corporate costs. Also included are expenses above the restaurant level, including salaries for field management, such as area and regional managers, and franchise operational support. General and administrative expenses are expected to grow as we grow, including incremental legal, accounting, insurance, investor relations and other expenses that will be incurred as a public company.

[Table of Contents](#)

Depreciation and Amortization

Depreciation and amortization expenses are periodic non-cash charges that consist of depreciation of fixed assets, including leasehold improvements and equipment, and amortization of various intangible assets primarily including franchise rights.

Occupancy and Other – Franchise Subleases

Occupancy and other – franchise subleases includes rent, property taxes and common area maintenance paid on properties subleased to franchisees where we remain primarily liable to the landlord.

Pre-opening Costs

Pre-opening costs are incurred in connection with opening of new restaurants and incurred prior to opening, including restaurant labor related to the hiring and training of restaurant employees, as well as supplies, occupancy and other operating expenses associated with the opening of new restaurants. Pre-opening costs are expensed as incurred.

Restaurant Closure Charges, Net

Restaurant closure charges, net, consists primarily of the future obligations associated with the closure or net sublease shortfall of a restaurant, including the present value of future lease obligations net of estimated sublease income, if any, accretion of the liability during the reporting period, any positive or negative adjustments to the liability as more information becomes available, sublease income from leases which are treated as deemed landlord financing as well as direct costs related to the restaurant closure.

Loss on Disposal of Assets, Net

Loss on disposal of assets, net includes the loss or gain on disposal of assets related to sales-leaseback transactions, sales, retirements and replacement or write-off of leasehold improvements, furniture, fixtures or equipment in the ordinary course of business, net of amortization of deferred gains on assets sales associated with sale-leaseback transactions, gains or losses recorded associated with the sale of company-operated restaurants to franchisees and gains from disposal of assets related to eminent domain.

Interest Expense

Interest expense consists primarily of interest expense on outstanding debt including capital lease obligations and deemed landlord financing liabilities. Deferred financing costs and debt discount are amortized at cost over the life of the related debt.

Other Income

Other income consists of a gain based on the amount of the liquidating distribution received in excess of our investment in four public partnerships where we served as a general partner with a 1% ownership interest, following the dissolution of these partnerships in December 2015.

Transaction-Related Costs

Transaction-related costs consists of direct costs incurred in connection with the strategic sale process which commenced during 2014 and resulted in the March 2015 Stock Purchase Agreement with the Levy Newco Parties and the Business Combination consummated pursuant to the Merger Agreement on June 30, 2015, costs related to the secondary offering of common stock completed in October 2015 and the offer to exchange shares of the Company's common stock for each outstanding warrant in August 2016.

Debt Modification Costs

In March 2015, DTH refinanced its existing debt (the "March 2015 Refinance") by amending the senior credit facility ("2013 Senior Credit Facility") and incurred lender and third party costs which were capitalized on the balance sheet and certain third party costs were expensed.

In August 2015, we refinanced our existing debt by entering into a new senior credit facility (the "2015 Senior Credit Facility") and incurred lender and third party costs which were all capitalized on the balance sheet.

[Table of Contents](#)

Change in Fair Value of Warrant Liability

Change in fair value of warrant liability represents the non-cash adjustment to record the warrant liability to its determined fair market value.

(Benefit) provision for Income Taxes

(Benefit) provision for income taxes consists of federal and state current and deferred income tax expense.

[Table of Contents](#)

Results of Operations

Comparison of Results of Operations for the Fifty-Two Weeks Ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) and Fifty-Three Weeks Ended January 3, 2017 (Successor)

The following table presents operating results for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) and the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) in absolute terms and expressed as a percentage of total revenue (or company restaurant sales), as compared below:

(Dollar amounts in thousands)	Successor					
	52 Weeks Ended January 2, 2018		53 Weeks Ended January 3, 2017		Increase/(Decrease)	
	(\$)	(%)	(\$)	(%)	(\$)	(%)
Statement of Operations Data:						
Revenue:						
Company restaurant sales	\$ 452,148	95.9 %	\$ 434,064	96.0%	\$ 18,084	4.2 %
Franchise revenue	16,464	3.5	15,676	3.5	788	5.0
Franchise sublease income	2,844	0.6	2,343	0.5	501	21.4
Total revenue	471,456	100.0	452,083	100.0	19,373	4.3
Operating expenses:						
Restaurant operating expenses:						
Food and paper costs	125,391	27.7 ⁽¹⁾	120,116	27.7 ⁽¹⁾	5,275	4.4 ⁽¹⁾
Labor and related expenses	145,012	32.1 ⁽¹⁾	135,725	31.3 ⁽¹⁾	9,287	6.8 ⁽¹⁾
Occupancy and other operating expenses	92,825	20.5 ⁽¹⁾	88,908	20.5 ⁽¹⁾	3,917	4.4 ⁽¹⁾
Total restaurant operating expenses	363,228	80.3 ⁽¹⁾	344,749	79.4 ⁽¹⁾	18,479	5.4 ⁽¹⁾
General and administrative	38,154	8.1	37,220	8.2	934	2.5
Depreciation and amortization	23,362	5.0	23,129	5.1	233	1.0
Occupancy and other - franchise subleases	2,608	0.6	2,207	0.5	401	18.2
Pre-opening costs	1,591	0.3	731	0.2	860	*
Restaurant closure charges, net	191	*	435	0.1	(244)	(56.1)
Loss on disposal of assets, net	1,075	0.2	312	0.1	763	*
Total operating expenses	430,209	91.3	408,783	90.4	21,426	5.2
Income from operations	41,247	8.7	43,300	9.6	(2,053)	(4.7)
Other expense:						
Interest expense	7,200	1.5	6,327	1.4	873	13.8
Transaction-related costs	—		731	0.2	(731)	(100.0)
Total other expense	7,200	1.5	7,058	1.6	142	2.0
Income from operations before (benefit) provision for income taxes	34,047	7.2	36,242	8.0	(2,195)	(6.1)
(Benefit) provision for income taxes	(15,824)	(3.4)	15,329	3.4	(31,153)	(203.2)
Net income	\$ 49,871	10.6 %	\$ 20,913	4.6%	\$ 28,958	138.5 %

⁽¹⁾ As a percentage of company restaurant sales.

* Immaterial/not meaningful

Company Restaurant Sales

Company restaurant sales increased \$18.1 million , or 4.2% , for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), primarily due to an increase in company-operated same store sales of \$17.3 million, or 4.0% , and \$8.8 million from the net impact of restaurant openings, transfers and closures since the beginning of the first quarter of 2016, partially offset by an \$8.0

[Table of Contents](#)

million decrease from the impact of the 53rd week in the prior year. The growth in company-operated same store sales was primarily the result of an increase in average check size of 3.8% and an increase in traffic of 0.2% compared to the prior period.

Franchise Revenue

Franchise revenue increased \$0.8 million , or 5.0% , for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), primarily due to an increase in franchise-operated same store sales of 4.6% and an increase in initial fees, partially offset by a \$0.3 million decrease from the impact of the 53rd week in the prior year.

Franchise Sublease Income

Franchise sublease income increased \$0.5 million , or 21.4% for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) primarily due to sublease income related to the sale of five company-operated restaurants to franchisees during the first quarter of 2017 in which we retained the leasehold interest to the real estate (see Note 6 included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K).

Food and Paper Costs

Food and paper costs increased \$5.3 million , or 4.4% for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), consisting of a \$5.0 million increase in food costs and a \$0.3 million increase in paper costs. The increase in food and paper costs was primarily due to modest commodity cost inflation and the increase in restaurant sales. As a percentage of company restaurant sales, food and paper costs were 27.7% for both the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) and the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor). This constant percentage resulted from modest menu price increases that approximately offset the impact of modest commodity inflation.

Labor and Related Expenses

Labor and related expenses increased \$9.3 million , or 6.8% , for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), primarily due to increased labor costs resulting from a California minimum wage increase on January 1, 2017, a Los Angeles minimum wage increase on July 1, 2017, an increase in payroll related taxes, increased paid sick leave expense and the increase in restaurant sales. As a percentage of company restaurant sales, labor and related expenses were 32.1% for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), compared to 31.3% for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor). This percentage increase resulted primarily from the impact of the increased California minimum wage and Los Angeles minimum wage, increased payroll tax expense and increased paid sick leave expense discussed above, partially offset by the impact of modest menu price increases and the same store sales increase in traffic which helps to leverage the fixed components of labor costs.

Occupancy and Other Operating Expenses

Occupancy and other operating expenses increased \$3.9 million , or 4.4% , for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), primarily due to an increase in in repairs, supplies and maintenance expense, advertising, rent, property taxes, credit and debit card processing fees and the increase in restaurant sales, partially offset by the impact of the 53rd week in the prior year. As a percentage of company restaurant sales, occupancy and other operating expenses were 20.5% for both the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) and the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor). This constant percentage was primarily due to modest menu price increases and the same store sales increases which helped to leverage fixed components of occupancy and other operating expenses including a reduction in utilities as a percent of company restaurant sales, offset by the increases in repairs, supplies and maintenance expense, occupancy expense and credit and debit card processing fees discussed above as a percent of company restaurant sales.

General and Administrative Expenses

General and administrative expenses increased \$0.9 million , or 2.5% , for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), primarily due to an increase in salaries, stock-based compensation, and incremental public company costs to support Sarbanes-Oxley Section 404(b) compliance in 2018, partially offset by a reduction in management incentive compensation and legal expenses and the impact of the 53rd week in the prior year. General and administrative expenses as a percentage of total revenue were 8.1% for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), compared to 8.2% for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and the decrease as a percent of total revenue was due to the increased revenue and reduction in management incentive compensation and legal expenses, partially offset by the increases in salaries,

[Table of Contents](#)

stock-based compensation and incremental public company costs to support Sarbanes-Oxley Section 404(b) compliance in 2018.

Depreciation and Amortization

Depreciation and amortization increased \$0.2 million , or 1.0% , for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), primarily due to the addition of new assets partially offset by the impact of the 53rd week in the prior year. As a percentage of total revenue, depreciation and amortization expense was 5.0% for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) compared to 5.1% for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor).

Occupancy and Other – Franchise Sublease

Occupancy and other – franchise sublease increased \$0.4 million , or 18.2% , for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), primarily due to sublease expense related to the sale of five company-operated restaurants to franchisees during the first quarter of 2017 in which we retained the leasehold interest to the real estate (see Note 6 included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K). As a percentage of total revenue, occupancy and other – franchise sublease was 0.6% for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) compared to 0.5% the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor).

Pre-opening Costs

Pre-opening costs were \$1.6 million for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), compared to \$0.7 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor). The increase was due to an increased level of pre-opening activity compared to the prior year due to additional new company-operated restaurant openings that occurred during 2017 and are planned for early 2018.

Restaurant Closure Charges, net

Restaurant closure charges, net was \$0.2 million for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), compared to \$0.4 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor). Current year activity includes net adjustments due to changes in estimates and accretion expense, partially offset by sublease income from leases which are treated as deemed landlord financing. The prior year activity primarily includes an adjustment to increase the lease termination liability for two closed restaurants partially offset by an adjustment to decrease the lease term liability for one closed restaurant all due to changes in estimate, accretion expense and other incremental charges related to the 12 underperforming restaurants we closed during the fourth fiscal quarter of 2015.

Loss on Disposal of Assets, net

Loss on disposal of assets, net was \$1.1 million for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), compared to \$0.3 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor). Current year loss was primarily related to the closure of six company-operated restaurants, a loss on the sale of owned land and building for one existing company-operated restaurant and one newly constructed company-operated restaurant, and the replacement of certain leasehold improvements and restaurant equipment, partially offset by net gains recorded associated with the sale of company-operated stores to franchisees (see Note 6 included elsewhere on this annual report on Form 10-K). The prior year loss was related to the closure of one company restaurant and the replacement of certain restaurant equipment.

Interest Expense

Interest expense was \$7.2 million for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) compared to \$6.3 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor). The increase in interest expense for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) is primarily due to an increase in interest rates partially offset by a lower level of debt outstanding during the current year and the impact of the 53rd week in the prior year.

Transaction-Related Costs

Transaction-related costs totaled \$0.7 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor). Prior year transaction-related costs primarily consist of direct costs incurred in connection with the offer to exchange shares of the Company's common stock for each outstanding Company warrant and direct costs incurred in connection with the Business Combination which closed on June 30, 2015 (See Note 3 and Note 13 included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K). There were no such costs during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor).

[Table of Contents](#)

(Benefit) provision for Income Taxes

The effective income tax rates were (46.5)% for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) and 42.3% for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor). The (benefit) provision for income taxes consisted of income tax benefit of \$(15.8) million for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) and income tax expense of \$15.3 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor). The income tax benefit for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) is primarily driven by the enactment of the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act effective for tax years beginning after December 31, 2017, reducing the U.S. federal corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21%, among other changes, which resulted in a provisional estimated tax benefit of \$29.1 million for the remeasurement of our applicable deferred tax assets and liabilities based on the rates at which they are expected to reverse, partially offset by statutory federal and state tax rates based on apportioned income. The income tax expense for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) primarily consists of statutory federal and state tax rates based on apportioned income, as well as providing for deferred tax liabilities for the excess amount for financial reporting over the tax basis of an investment in a domestic subsidiary. In addition, during fiscal 2016 the effective tax rate is also driven by transaction-related costs incurred in connection with the warrant tender offer which are not deductible for taxes as well as lower stock compensation expense deductible for tax related to the June 30, 2016 vesting of restricted stock awards as compared to the cumulative amount recorded as stock-based compensation expense, partially offset by target job credits.

[Table of Contents](#)

Comparison of Results of Operations for the Fifty-Three Weeks Ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), Twenty-Six Weeks Ended December 29, 2015 (Successor), and Twenty-Six Weeks Ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor)

The following table presents operating results for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor), and twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor) in absolute terms and expressed as a percentage of total revenue (or company restaurant sales), as compared below:

	Successor				Predecessor	
	53 Weeks Ended January 3, 2017		26 Weeks Ended December 29, 2015		26 Weeks Ended June 30, 2015	
(Dollar amounts in thousands)	(\$)	(%)	(\$)	(%)	(\$)	(%)
Statement of Operations Data:						
Revenue:						
Company restaurant sales	\$ 434,064	96.0%	\$ 206,939	96.0%	\$ 200,676	96.2%
Franchise revenue	15,676	3.5	7,328	3.4	6,693	3.2
Franchise sublease income	2,343	0.5	1,183	0.5	1,183	0.6
Total revenue	452,083	100.0	215,450	100.0	208,552	100.0
Operating expenses:						
Restaurant operating expenses:						
Food and paper costs	120,116	27.7 (1)	59,263	28.6 (1)	57,447	28.6 (1)
Labor and related expenses	135,725	31.3 (1)	61,448	29.7 (1)	61,120	30.5 (1)
Occupancy and other operating expenses	88,908	20.5 (1)	43,191	20.9 (1)	43,611	21.7 (1)
Total restaurant operating expenses	344,749	79.4 (1)	163,902	79.2 (1)	162,178	80.8 (1)
General and administrative	37,220	8.2	17,501	8.1	14,850	7.1
Depreciation and amortization	23,129	5.1	11,276	5.2	8,252	4.0
Occupancy and other - franchise subleases	2,207	0.5	1,140	0.5	1,109	0.5
Pre-opening costs	731	0.2	366	0.2	276	0.1
Restaurant closure charges, net	435	0.1	2,015	0.9	94	*
Loss on disposal of assets, net	312	0.1	3	*	99	*
Total operating expenses	408,783	90.4	196,203	91.1	186,858	89.6
Income from operations	43,300	9.6	19,247	8.9	21,694	10.4
Other expense (income), net:						
Interest expense	6,327	1.4	3,652	1.7	11,491	5.5
Other income	—	—	(220)	(0.1)	—	—
Transaction-related costs	731	0.2	12,972	6.0	7,255	3.5
Debt modification costs	—	—	78	*	139	0.1
Change in fair value of warrant liability	—	—	—	—	(35)	*
Total other expense, net	7,058	1.6	16,482	7.7	18,850	9.0
Income from operations before provision for income taxes	36,242	8.0	2,765	1.3	2,844	1.4
Provision for income taxes	15,329	3.4	112	0.1	740	0.4
Net income	\$ 20,913	4.6%	\$ 2,653	1.2%	\$ 2,104	1.0%

(1) As a percentage of company restaurant sales.

* Immaterial/not meaningful

[Table of Contents](#)

Combined financial data:

	Successor		26 Weeks Ended December 29, 2015	Predecessor	Combined		Increase/ (Decrease)	
	53 Weeks Ended January 3, 2017			26 Weeks Ended June 30, 2015	52 Weeks Ended December 29, 2015			
(Dollar amounts in thousands)	(\$)	(%)	(\$)	(\$)	(\$)	(%)	\$	%
Company restaurant sales	\$ 434,064	96.0%	\$ 206,939	\$ 200,676	\$ 407,615	96.1%	\$ 26,449	6.5 %
Franchise revenues	15,676	3.5	7,328	6,693	14,021	3.3	1,655	11.8
Franchise sublease income	2,343	0.5	1,183	1,183	2,366	0.6	(23)	(1.0)
Total revenue	452,083	100.0	215,450	208,552	424,002	100.0	28,081	6.6
Operating expense								
Restaurant operating expenses:								
Food and paper costs	120,116	27.7 ⁽¹⁾	59,263	57,447	116,710	28.6 ⁽¹⁾	3,406	2.9 ⁽¹⁾
Labor and related expenses	135,725	31.3 ⁽¹⁾	61,448	61,120	122,568	30.1 ⁽¹⁾	13,157	10.7 ⁽¹⁾
General and administrative	37,220	8.2	17,501	14,850	32,351	7.6	4,869	15.1
Occupancy and other-franchise subleases	2,207	0.5	1,140	1,109	2,249	0.5	(42)	(1.9)
Pre-opening costs	731	0.2	366	276	642	0.2	89	13.9
Restaurant closure charges, net	435	0.1	2,015	94	2,109	0.5	(1,674)	(79.4)
Loss on disposal of assets, net	312	0.1	3	99	102	*	210	*

(1) As a percentage of company restaurant sales.

* Immaterial/not meaningful

Company Restaurant Sales

Company restaurant sales increased \$26.4 million , or 6.5% , for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), primarily due to an increase in company-operated same store sales of \$18.1 million, or 4.7% , a \$8.0 million increase from the impact of the 53rd week and \$0.3 million from the net impact of restaurant openings, transfers and closures since the beginning of the first quarter of 2015. The growth in company-operated same store sales was primarily the result of an increase in average check size of 4.5% and an increase in traffic of 0.2% compared to the prior period.

Franchise Revenue

Franchise revenue increased \$1.7 million , or 11.8% , for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), primarily due to an increase in franchise-operated same store sales of 4.9% , a \$3.0 million increase from the impact of the 53rd week and an increase in initial fees.

Franchise Sublease Income

Franchise sublease income remained substantially the same for both the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and the combined fifty-two week period ended December 29, 2015 .

[Table of Contents](#)

Food and Paper Costs

Food and paper costs increased \$3.4 million , or 2.9% for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), consisting of a \$3.1 million increase in food costs and a \$0.3 million increase in paper costs. The increase in food and paper costs was primarily due to increased company restaurant sales including the 53rd week impact, partially offset by a decrease in commodity costs. As a percentage of company restaurant sales, food and paper costs were 27.7 % for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), compared to 28.6 % for the combined fifty-two weeks ended December 29, 2015 . This percentage decrease resulted from modest menu price increases and reduced commodity costs during the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor).

Labor and Related Expenses

Labor and related expenses increased \$13.2 million , or 10.7% , for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), primarily due to increased labor costs resulting from a California minimum wage increase on January 1, 2016, increased company restaurant sales from the 53rd week, increased workers compensation expense due to higher payments and reserves related to underlying claim activity and the impact from new paid sick leave requirements that began July 1, 2015 in California. As a percentage of company restaurant sales, labor and related expenses were 31.3 % for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), compared to 30.1 % for the combined fifty-two weeks ended December 29, 2015 . This percentage increase resulted primarily from the impact of the increased California minimum wage, increased workers compensation expense and new sick leave requirements discussed above, partially offset by the impact of modest menu price increases.

Occupancy and Other Operating Expenses

Occupancy and other operating expenses were \$88.9 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) compared to \$43.2 million for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and \$43.6 million for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor). The increase during the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) compared to the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor) was primarily due to an increase in operating expenses resulting from increased company restaurant sales from the 53rd week as well as increases in credit and debit card processing fees, partially offset by reductions in utilities and insurance expense. As a percentage of company restaurant sales, occupancy and other operating expenses were 20.5 % for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) compared to 20.9 % for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and 21.7 % for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor). This overall reduction as a percent of company restaurant sales was primarily due to modest menu price increases and the same store sales increase which helped to leverage the fixed components of occupancy and other operating expenses, including a reduction in utilities, insurance and occupancy as a percent of company restaurant sales, partially offset by increased credit and debit card processing fees as a percent of company restaurant sales.

General and Administrative Expenses

General and administrative expenses increased \$4.9 million , or 15.1% , for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), primarily due to an increase in stock-based compensation and benefits expense, legal and professional expense, additional costs incurred as a public company and the impact of the 53rd week. General and administrative expenses as a percentage of total revenue were 8.2 % for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), compared to 7.6 % for the combined fifty-two weeks ended December 29, 2015 and the increase as a percent of total revenue was due to the above mentioned cost increases partially offset by the increased revenues.

Depreciation and Amortization

Depreciation and amortization was \$23.1 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) compared to \$11.3 million for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and \$8.3 million for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor). The increase is primarily due to the addition of new assets, the impact of the 53rd week and incremental depreciation and amortization expense resulting from adjusting property and equipment and identifiable intangible assets to fair value in acquisition accounting for the Business Combination on June 30, 2015. As a percentage of total revenue, depreciation and amortization expense was 5.1 % for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) compared to 5.2 % for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and 4.0 % for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor).

[Table of Contents](#)

Occupancy and Other—Franchise Sublease

Occupancy and other – franchise sublease was \$2.2 million for both the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and the combined fifty-two weeks ended December 29, 2015 . As a percentage of total revenue, occupancy and other – franchise sublease was 0.5 % for both the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and the combined fifty-two weeks ended December 29, 2015 .

Pre-opening Costs

Pre-opening costs were \$0.7 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), compared to \$0.6 million for the combined fifty-two weeks ended December 29, 2015 . The increase was due to an increased level of pre-opening activity compared to the prior year due to additional new company-operated restaurant openings.

Restaurant Closure Charges, net

Restaurant closure charges, net was \$0.4 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), compared to \$2.1 million for the combined fifty-two weeks ended December 29, 2015 . The current year activity primarily includes an adjustment to increase the lease termination liability for two closed restaurants partially offset by an adjustment to decrease the lease term liability for one closed restaurant all due to changes in estimate, accretion expense and other incremental charges related to the 12 underperforming restaurants we closed during the fourth fiscal quarter of 2015. During the fourth quarter of fiscal 2015, we recorded restaurant closure charges totaling \$4.5 million , offset by \$2.7 million related to the reclassification of lease related liabilities, for a net charge of \$1.8 million related to the 12 underperforming restaurants. The net charge of \$1.8 million and additional charges of \$0.3 million related to other prior restaurant closures or sublease income shortfalls are both included in restaurant closure charges, net on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income (loss) for the combined fifty-two weeks ended December 29, 2015. Restaurant closure charges related to the closure of the 12 underperforming company-operated restaurants include (1) the present value of the future lease obligations net of estimated sublease income, (2) a lease termination payment, (3) brokerage commissions, (4) post closure rent, utilities, property tax and common area maintenance charges, (5) unused food and paper that could not be redeployed, (6) WARN act and stay bonus payments to terminated employees, and (7) other direct costs associated with the closures.

Loss on Disposal of Assets, net

Loss on disposal of assets, net was \$0.3 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), compared to \$0.1 million for the combined fifty-two weeks ended December 29, 2015 . Current year loss was related to the closure of one company restaurant and the replacement of certain restaurant equipment. The prior year loss of \$0.1 million was related to the closure of one company-operated restaurant.

Interest Expense

Interest expense was \$6.3 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) compared to \$3.7 million for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and \$11.5 million for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor). The decrease in interest expense for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) is primarily due to the debt refinancing that occurred in August 2015 which replaced the existing term loan with a revolving credit facility with a significantly lower interest rate, the \$68.6 million reduction to the 2013 Senior Credit Facility in June 2015, and the full repayment of DTH's subordinated notes in March 2015.

Other income

Other income was \$(0.2) million for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor). The Company held a 1% ownership interest in four public limited partnerships in which the Company served as general partner. The partnerships were liquidated and dissolved in December 2015 and the Company recorded a gain of \$0.2 million based on the approximate \$1.8 million distribution received in excess of the carrying value of the investment in the partnerships. See Note 2 of the notes to consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K for more information.

Transaction-Related Costs

Transaction-related costs totaled \$0.7 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), \$13.0 million for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and \$7.3 million for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor). Current year transaction-related costs primarily consist of direct costs incurred in connection with the offer to

Table of Contents

exchange shares of the Company's common stock for each outstanding Company warrant and direct costs incurred in connection with the Business Combination which closed on June 30, 2015 (See Note 3 and Note 13 included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K). Prior year transaction-related costs primarily consist of direct costs incurred in connection with the Business Combination which closed on June 30, 2015 (See Note 3 included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K) as well as the costs related to the secondary offering of common stock completed in October 2015.

Debt Modification Costs

Debt modification costs totaled \$0.1 million for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and related to our refinance in August 2015 of our then existing debt by entering into the new 2015 Senior Credit Facility. Debt modification costs totaled \$0.1 million for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor) and was related to our March 2015 Refinance. There were no such debt modification costs for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor).

Change in Fair Value of Warrant Liability

Change in fair value of warrant liability required no adjustment for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor). The warrant liability was reclassified to equity on March 20, 2015 in connection with the Step 1 of the Business Combination discussed in Note 3 in the notes to the consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K. Change in fair value of warrant liability was \$35,000 for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor).

Provision for Income Taxes

The effective income tax rates were 42.3% for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), 4.1% for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and 26.0% for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), respectively. The provision for income taxes consisted of income tax expense of \$15.3 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), \$0.1 million for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and \$0.7 million for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), respectively. The income tax expense for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) primarily consists of statutory federal and state tax rates based on apportioned income, as well as providing for deferred tax liabilities for the excess amount for financial reporting over the tax basis of an investment in a domestic subsidiary. In addition, the effective tax rate is also driven by transaction-related costs incurred in connection with the warrant tender offer which are not deductible for taxes as well as lower stock compensation expense deductible for tax related to the June 30, 2016 vesting of restricted stock awards as compared to the cumulative amount recorded as stock-based compensation expense, partially offset by target job credits.

As part of purchase accounting, we were required to record all of DTH's acquired assets and liabilities at their acquisition date fair value, including deferred income taxes. We considered the weight of both positive and negative evidence and concluded that it is more likely than not that net deferred tax assets will be realized and that no valuation allowance on DTH's deferred tax asset was required as of the date of acquisition. As a result, we established deferred tax assets as well as deferred tax liabilities related to indefinite-lived intangibles through the purchase price allocation (see note 3 to the consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K). In addition, after considering the Business Combination, the projected post-combination results and all available evidence, the Company released \$1.9 million of valuation allowance that was previously provided against the Company's deferred tax assets. In accordance with ASC 805-740-30-3, we recorded this release through income tax benefit during the twenty-six week period ended December 29, 2015 (Successor). The income tax expense for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) also consists of statutory federal and state tax rates based on apportioned income and is also driven by transaction-related costs incurred in connection with the Business Combination which are not deductible for taxes, partially offset by target job credits.

Income tax expense for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor) primarily related to the increase in deferred tax liabilities for indefinite-lived assets and the related effect of maintaining a full valuation allowance against certain deferred tax assets.

Liquidity and Capital Resources

Potential Impacts of Market Conditions on Capital Resources

We have experienced positive trends in consumer traffic and increases in same store sales, however, the restaurant industry continues to be challenged and uncertainty exists as to the sustainability of these favorable trends.

[Table of Contents](#)

We believe that expected cash flow from operations, available cash of \$6.6 million at January 2, 2018 and available borrowing capacity of \$78.8 million at January 2, 2018 will be adequate to fund debt service requirements, operating lease obligations, capital expenditures and working capital obligations for at least the next 12 months. However, the ability to continue to meet these requirements and obligations will depend on, among other things, the ability to achieve anticipated levels of revenue and cash flow and the ability to manage costs and working capital successfully.

Summary of Cash Flows

Our primary sources of liquidity and capital resources have been cash provided from operations, cash and cash equivalents, and our senior secured credit facilities. Our primary requirements for liquidity and capital are new restaurants, existing restaurant capital investments (primarily maintenance and roll-out of equipment related to our strategy to emphasize freshness and speed), investments in infrastructure and information technology, interest payments on debt, lease obligations, income tax payments, purchases under our share and warrant repurchase program and working capital and general corporate needs. The working capital requirements are not significant since customers pay for their purchases in cash or by payment card (credit or debit) at the time of sale. Thus, we are able to sell many inventory items before we have to pay suppliers for such items since it typically has payment terms for its food and paper suppliers. Company-operated restaurants do not require significant inventories.

The following table presents summary cash flow information for the periods indicated (in thousands).

	Successor			Predecessor
	52 Weeks Ended January 2, 2018	53 Weeks Ended January 3, 2017	26 Weeks Ended December 29, 2015	26 Weeks Ended June 30, 2015
Net cash provided by (used in)				
Operating activities	\$ 57,788	\$ 57,546	\$ 17,085	\$ 10,083
Investing activities	(40,689)	(47,654)	42,566	(15,284)
Financing activities	(19,335)	(11,291)	(49,457)	1,820
Net (decrease) increase in cash	\$ (2,236)	\$ (1,399)	\$ 10,194	\$ (3,381)

Cash Flows Provided by Operating Activities

In the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), cash flows provided by operating activities were \$57.8 million. The cash flows provided by operating activities resulted from net income of \$49.9 million, non-cash adjustment for asset depreciation and amortization of \$22.9 million, stock-based compensation of \$4.9 million, loss on disposal of assets, net of \$1.1 million, restaurants closure charges of \$0.4 million, and changes in net working capital requirements totaling \$1.2 million, partially offset by deferred income taxes of \$22.6 million,

In the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), cash flows provided by operating activities were \$57.5 million. The cash flows provided by operating activities resulted from net income of \$20.9 million, non-cash adjustment for asset depreciation and amortization of \$22.9 million, deferred income taxes of \$10.7 million, stock-based compensation of \$4.1 million, and other non-cash adjustments of \$0.5 million, partially offset by the changes in net working capital requirements totaling \$1.6 million.

In the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor), cash flows provided by operating activities were \$17.1 million. The cash flows provided by operating activities resulted from net income of \$2.7 million, non-cash adjustment for asset depreciation and amortization of \$11.1 million, stock-based compensation of \$1.5 million, debt modification costs of \$0.1 million, and the changes in net working capital requirements totaling \$1.7 million, which includes cash outflows of \$4.3 million related to transaction expenses previously expensed by LAC and not reported with DTH's Predecessor consolidated statements of comprehensive income (loss).

In the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), cash flows provided by operating activities were \$10.1 million. The cash flows provided by operating activities results from net income of \$2.1 million, non-cash adjustment for asset depreciation and amortization of \$9.2 million, stock-based compensation of \$0.5 million, deferred income taxes of \$0.6 million, debt modification costs of \$0.1 million, and loss on disposal of assets, net of \$0.1 million, partially offset by the changes in net working capital requirements totaling \$2.5 million.

Cash Flows (Used in) Provided by Investing Activities

In the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), cash flows used in investing activities were \$40.7 million, which were primarily the result of purchase of property and equipment and other assets of \$51.7 million and the acquisition of one franchise-operated restaurant for \$1.1 million, partially offset by proceeds from the disposal of property and equipment of \$9.9 million and proceeds from the sale of five company-operated restaurants for \$2.2 million. See Note 6 of the notes to consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K for more information. For the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), purchase of property and equipment was \$50.6 million, including \$13.9 million to maintain or enhance our existing restaurants and information systems, \$8.0 million for discretionary investment in equipment, technology and remodeled restaurants, \$5.6 million of owned land and building for development after 2017 and \$23.1 million for new restaurant construction whereby one new restaurant was sold and leased back for \$2.3 million and other new restaurants received an aggregate \$3.9 million of deemed landlord financing proceeds.

In the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), cash flows used in investing activities were \$47.7 million, which were primarily the result of purchase of property and equipment and other assets of \$47.2 million and the acquisition of six franchise-operated restaurants of \$3.9 million which includes the purchase of land and building of \$2.1 million, partially offset by proceeds from the disposal of property and equipment of \$3.4 million. The purchase price for the acquisition of franchise-operated restaurants was primarily allocated to land and building, property and equipment and goodwill acquired. See Note 6 of the notes to consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K for more information. For the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), purchase of property and equipment was \$45.8 million, including \$10.1 million for new restaurant construction (gross), \$13.9 million for capitalized maintenance, \$7.6 million for discretionary investment in equipment, technology and remodeled restaurants, \$5.1 million for land acquisition for development after 2016, and \$9.1 million of owned land and building acquired for existing company restaurants including \$1.3 million for an existing company restaurant which has been sold and leased back as of January 3, 2017.

In the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor), cash flows provided by investing activities were \$42.6 million. The cash flows provided by investing activities were primarily the result of proceeds from the Company's trust account of \$150.0 million and proceeds of \$1.6 million from dissolution of investments in partnerships, partially offset by \$89.8 million for the Business Combination with DTH and purchase of property and equipment and other assets totaling \$19.2 million. For the combined fifty-two weeks ended December 29, 2015, purchase of property and equipment was \$33.4 million, including \$11.3 million for new unit construction, \$11.8 million for capitalized maintenance and \$10.3 million for discretionary investment in equipment and technology.

In the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), cash flows used in investing activities were \$15.3 million primarily due to the purchase of property and equipment and other assets.

Cash Flows (Used in) Provided by Financing Activities

In the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), cash flows used in financing activities were \$19.3 million. The cash flows used in financing activities were primarily the result of the repurchase of 986,497 shares of our common stock and 424,439 warrants for an aggregate purchase price of \$13.8 million, including incremental direct costs to acquire the shares and warrants, payments of tax withholding of \$1.9 million related to restricted stock vesting and payments on capital lease and deemed landlord financing totaling \$1.6 million, partially offset by proceeds from deemed landlord financing liabilities of \$3.9 million and proceeds from stock option exercises of \$0.1 million. In addition, during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), we borrowed \$31.5 million on our revolving credit facility and made payments of \$37.5 million on our revolving credit facility.

In the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), cash flows used in financing activities were \$11.3 million. The cash flows used in financing activities were primarily the result of the repurchase of 1,347,300 shares of our common stock and 699,007 warrants for an aggregate purchase price of \$15.3 million, including incremental direct costs to acquire the shares and warrants, payments on capital lease and deemed landlord financing totaling \$1.7 million, payments of tax withholding of \$0.9 million related to restricted stock vesting and payment for interest rate cap of \$0.3 million, partially offset by proceeds from deemed landlord financing liabilities of \$2.0 million. In addition, during the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), we borrowed \$24.0 million on our revolving credit facility and made payments of \$19.0 million on our revolving credit facility.

In the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor), cash flows used in financing activities were \$49.5 million. The cash flows used in financing activities were primarily the result of the full repayment of the 2013 Term Loan of \$227.1 million, payments on revolving credit facilities, capital lease and deemed landlord financing and debt issue costs in aggregate of \$15.3

[Table of Contents](#)

million as well as repayment of note payable of \$0.5 million and payment of deferred underwriter compensation of \$5.3 million both of which were accrued on LAC's balance sheet at June 16, 2015, partially offset by net proceeds from the 2015 Revolving Credit Facility of \$162.6 million, proceeds of \$35.0 million from the issuance of common stock and proceeds from deemed landlord financing liabilities of \$1.2 million.

In the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), cash flows provided by financing activities were \$1.8 million. The cash flows provided by financing activities were primarily the result of proceeds from the issuance of common stock of \$91.2 million and proceeds from the term loan and revolving credit facilities of \$33.7 million, partially offset by the full repayment of the subordinate notes of \$108.1 million, payment of tax withholding related to option exercises and distribution of restricted stock units of \$7.5 million and payments on revolving credit facilities, capital lease obligations, deemed landlord financing and debt issue costs of \$7.5 million.

Debt and Other Obligations

Senior Credit Facility

On March 20, 2015, DTH increased the borrowings on its 2013 Senior Credit Facility by \$25.1 million and borrowed \$10.0 million under the revolving credit facility. In addition, on March 12, 2015, DTH satisfied the rating condition on its 2013 Senior Credit Facility resulting in a decrease in interest rates to LIBOR (not to be less than 1.00%) plus a margin of 4.25% as of March 25, 2015. On June 30, 2015, DTH used \$68.6 million of the proceeds from the Business Combination to pay down borrowings under the 2013 Senior Credit Facility.

On August 4, 2015, we refinanced our existing 2013 Senior Credit Facility and entered into the 2015 Senior Credit Facility which matures on August 4, 2020 and provides for a \$250.0 million revolving credit facility. We borrowed \$164.0 million under the 2015 Senior Credit Facility to repay all of existing indebtedness under our existing 2013 Senior Credit Facility and to pay related costs associated with the financing. At the time of termination, \$162.5 million of term loan borrowings were outstanding under the 2013 Senior Credit Facility and \$17.6 million revolver capacity that was utilized to support outstanding letters of credit.

At our option, loans under the 2015 Senior Credit Facility may bear interest at a base rate or LIBOR, plus a margin determined in accordance with a consolidated total lease adjusted leverage ratio-based pricing grid. The base rate is calculated as the highest of (a) the Federal Funds Rate plus 1/2 of 1%, (b) the prime rate of Bank of America, and (c) LIBOR plus 1.00%. For LIBOR loans, the margin is in the range of 1.50% to 2.50%, and for base rate loans the margin is in the range of 0.50% and 1.50%. The margin was initially set at 2.00% for LIBOR loans and at 1.00% for base rate loans until delivery of financial statements and a compliance certificate for the fourth fiscal quarter ending after the closing date of the 2015 Senior Credit Facility. Following delivery of financial statements and a compliance certificate for the fourth fiscal quarter ending December 29, 2015 (Successor), the applicable margin decreased 0.25% for both LIBOR loans and base rate loans on March 18, 2016.

The 2015 Senior Credit Facility contains certain financial covenants, including the maintenance of a consolidated total lease adjusted leverage ratio and a consolidated fixed charge coverage ratio. We were in compliance with the financial covenants as of January 2, 2018 .

At January 2, 2018 , the weighted average interest rate on the outstanding balance of the 2015 Senior Credit Facility was 3.32% . As of January 2, 2018 there were \$153.0 million of borrowings under the 2015 Senior Credit Facility and letters of credit outstanding of \$18.2 million . Unused borrowing capacity at January 2, 2018 was \$78.8 million .

Subordinated Notes

In connection with the DTH's May 2010 restructuring, wholly owned subsidiaries of DTH issued subordinated notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$150.0 million which had an interest rate of 13.0%, with interest accrued to principal. The outstanding balance of \$111.2 million on these subordinated notes was paid in full on March 20, 2015.

Hedging Arrangements

Effective June 30, 2013, DTH entered into an interest rate cap agreement with a three-year term with a fixed notional amount of \$87.5 million of the then existing term loan that effectively converted that portion of the loan outstanding under the 2013 Senior Credit Facility from variable rate debt to capped variable rate debt, resulting in a change in the applicable interest rate from an interest rate of three-month LIBOR plus the applicable percentage (as provided by the 2013 Senior Credit Facility) to a capped interest rate of 1.00% to 2.25% plus the applicable percentage.

[Table of Contents](#)

DTH was hedging forecasted transactions expected to occur through June 30, 2016. As of the July 1, 2015 reset date, however, DTH elected the one-month LIBOR rate option for its variable rate interest payments on term balances equal to or in excess of the applicable notional amount of the interest rate cap agreement, and as a result, this hedge became ineffective. Therefore, after July 1, 2015, any changes in fair value were recorded through interest expense. There were no significant changes in fair value for the interest rate cap from July 1, 2015 through June 30, 2016.

In June 2016, we entered into an interest rate cap agreement that became effective July 1, 2016, to hedge cash flows associated with interest rate fluctuations on variable rate debt, with a termination date of March 31, 2020 ("2016 Interest Rate Cap Agreement"). The 2016 Interest Rate Cap Agreement has a fixed notional amount of \$70.0 million of the 2015 Senior Credit Facility that effectively converted that portion of the outstanding balance of the 2015 Senior Credit Facility from variable rate debt to capped variable rate debt, resulting in a change in the applicable interest rate from an interest rate of one-month LIBOR plus the applicable percentage (as provided by the 2015 Senior Credit Facility) to a capped interest rate of 2.00% plus the applicable percentage.

Contractual Obligations

The following table represents our contractual commitments (which include expected interest expense, calculated based on current interest rates) to make future payments pursuant to debt and other obligations disclosed above and pursuant to restaurant operating leases outstanding as of January 2, 2018 (Successor) (in thousands):

	Payments Due by Period				
	Total	2018	2019-2020	2021-2022	2023 and thereafter
Operating leases, net ⁽¹⁾	\$ 252,858	\$ 29,000	\$ 51,591	\$ 44,911	\$ 127,356
Capital leases and deemed landlord financing	43,692	3,600	5,960	5,324	28,808
Long-term debt	153,000	—	153,000	—	—
Interest on long-term debt ⁽²⁾	14,816	5,556	9,260	—	—
Purchase commitments ⁽³⁾	70,351	20,348	42,191	7,812	—
Total ⁽⁴⁾	\$ 534,717	\$ 58,504	\$ 262,002	\$ 58,047	\$ 156,164

- (1) Includes amounts for restaurant operating leases related to the 12 restaurants closed in the fourth fiscal quarter of 2015 and related subleases both of which have been included in our restaurant closure liability on our consolidated balance sheets as of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor) on a present value basis.
- (2) Interest on long-term debt includes monthly interest due on the drawn portion of the revolver at interest rates of 3.32% , a fee of 1.75% on the outstanding letters of credit and a 0.20% unused commitment fee on the unused balance of the revolver.
- (3) Purchase commitments included in the table above are for commitments in excess of one year related to both company-operated and franchise-operated restaurants for food purchases and supplies, information technology service agreements and a long-term beverage supply agreement.
- (4) The above table excludes purchase commitments related to certain vendors that supply food products, construction, marketing and other service-related arrangements which occur in the normal course of business and are typically short-term in nature. Other obligations excluded from the above table include contingent rent payments, property taxes, insurance payments and common area maintenance costs.

Off-Balance Sheet and Other Arrangements

At January 2, 2018 , we had a \$250.0 million revolving credit facility of which \$18.2 million was reserved for outstanding letters of credit and \$78.8 million was unused and available for borrowings under the 2015 Senior Credit Facility. We did not have any other material off-balance sheet arrangements, except for restaurant operating leases entered into in the normal course of business.

Stock Repurchase Program

In February 2016, the Board of Directors authorized a share repurchase program under which we may purchase up to \$25.0 million in the aggregate of our common stock and warrants, which expires upon completion of the repurchase program, unless terminated earlier by the Board of Directors. On August 23, 2016, we announced that the Board of Directors increased the

[Table of Contents](#)

repurchase program by \$25.0 million, to \$50.0 million. Purchases under the program may be made in open market or privately negotiated transactions. During the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) we purchased (1) 986,497 shares for an average price per share of \$12.41 for an aggregate cost of approximately \$12.3 million including incremental direct costs to acquire the shares, and (2) 424,439 warrants for an average price per warrant of \$3.72 for an aggregate cost of approximately \$1.6 million, including incremental direct costs to acquire the warrants. As of January 2, 2018 (Successor), there was approximately \$20.9 million remaining under the share repurchase program. We have no obligations to repurchase shares or warrants under this authorization, and the timing and value of shares and warrants purchased will depend on our stock price, warrant price, market conditions and other factors.

Of the 424,439 warrants purchased during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), 400,000 warrants were purchased from PW Acquisitions, LP, a related party, at \$3.75 per warrant, representing a 5% discount from the closing price of \$3.95 per warrant on the transaction date. A member of the Company's Board of Directors is the chief executive officer and managing member of the general partner of PW Acquisitions, LP.

Critical Accounting Policies and Use of Estimates

The preparation of the consolidated financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP requires us to make estimates and assumptions that affect the amounts reported in the consolidated financial statements and accompanying notes. We believe that such estimates have been based on reasonable and supportable assumptions and the resulting estimates are reasonable for use in the preparation of the consolidated financial statements. Actual results could differ from these estimates. Our significant estimates include estimates for impairment of goodwill, intangible assets and property and equipment, insurance reserves, restaurant closure reserves, stock-based compensation, contingent liabilities and income tax valuation allowances.

Accounting policies are an integral part of our financial statements. A thorough understanding of these accounting policies is essential when reviewing our reported results of operations and financial position. Management believes that the critical accounting policies and estimates involve the most difficult management judgments due to the sensitivity of the methods and assumptions used. Our significant accounting policies are described in Note 2 in the accompanying consolidated financial statements in Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

Business Combinations

We account for acquisitions using the purchase method of accounting. Accordingly, assets acquired and liabilities assumed are recorded at their estimated fair values at the acquisition date. The excess of purchase price over fair value of net assets acquired, including the amount assigned to identifiable intangible assets, is recorded as goodwill. Given the time it takes to obtain pertinent information to finalize the acquired company's balance sheet, it may be several quarters before we are able to finalize those initial fair value estimates. Accordingly, it is not uncommon for the initial estimates to be subsequently revised. The results of operations of acquired businesses are included in the consolidated financial statements, included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K, from the acquisition date.

Revenue Recognition

Restaurant sales from the operation of company-operated restaurants are recognized when food and service is delivered to customers. Franchise revenue comprise (i) development fees, (ii) franchise fees, (iii) on-going royalties and (iv) renewal fees. Development and franchise fees, a portion of which are collected in advance and are non-refundable, received pursuant to individual development agreements, grant the right to develop franchise-operated restaurants in future periods in specific geographic areas. Both development and franchise fees are deferred and recognized as revenue when we have substantially fulfilled our obligations pursuant to the development agreement. Development fees and franchise fees are generally recognized as revenue upon the opening of a franchise restaurant or upon termination of the development agreement with the franchisee. Deferred development fees and deferred franchise fees are included in other non-current liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets. Royalties from franchise-operated restaurants are based on a percentage of franchise restaurant sales and are recognized in the period the related franchise-operated restaurant sales occur. Renewal fees are recognized when a renewal agreement becomes effective. We report revenue net of sales taxes collected from customers and remitted to governmental taxing authorities and promotional allowances. Franchise sublease income is composed of rental income associated with properties leased or subleased to franchisees. We sell gift cards to customers in our restaurants. The gift cards sold to customers have no stated expiration dates and are recorded in accrued liabilities and other non-current liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets. We recognize revenue from gift cards: (i) when the gift card is redeemed by the customer; or (ii) under the delayed recognition method, when the likelihood of the gift card being redeemed by the customer is remote (gift card breakage) and we determine that there is not a legal obligation to remit the unredeemed gift cards to the relevant jurisdiction. The determination of the gift card breakage rate is based upon our specific historical redemption patterns. Recognized breakage revenue was not

[Table of Contents](#)

significant to any period presented in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income. Any future revisions to the estimated breakage rate may result in changes in the amount of breakage revenue recognized in future periods.

Goodwill and Indefinite-Lived Intangible Assets

Indefinite-lived intangible assets consist of goodwill and trademarks.

Our goodwill and trademarks are not amortized, but tested annually for impairment and tested more frequently for impairment if events and circumstances indicate that the asset might be impaired. We conduct annual goodwill and trademark impairment tests in the fourth quarter of each fiscal year or whenever an indicator of impairment exists.

In assessing potential goodwill impairment, we have the option to first assess the qualitative factors to determine whether the existence of events or circumstances leads to a determination that the fair value of net assets, including goodwill, is less than its carrying amount. Our qualitative assessment of the recoverability of goodwill considers various macro-economic, industry-specific and company-specific factors. These factors include: (i) severe adverse industry or economic trends; (ii) significant company-specific actions, including exiting an activity in conjunction with restructuring of operations; (iii) current, historical or projected deterioration of the Company's financial performance; or (iv) a sustained decrease in the Company's market capitalization below its net book value. If, after assessing the totality of events or circumstances, we determine it is unlikely that the fair value of net assets, including goodwill, is less than its carrying amount, then performing the two-step impairment test is unnecessary. However, if we conclude otherwise, then we are required to perform the first step of the two-step impairment test by comparing the fair value of net assets, including goodwill, with its carrying amount. If the fair value of net assets, including goodwill, exceeds its carrying amount, goodwill is not considered impaired; otherwise, goodwill is considered impaired and the loss is measured by performing step two. Under step two, the impairment loss is measured by comparing the implied fair value of goodwill with the carrying amount of goodwill. We also have the option to bypass the qualitative assessment and proceed directly to performing the first step of the two-step goodwill impairment test. We may continue performing the qualitative assessment in any subsequent period.

The methods we use to estimate fair value include discounted future cash flows analysis and market valuation based on similar companies. Key assumptions included in the cash flow model include future revenues, operating costs, working capital changes, capital expenditures and a discount rate that approximates our weighted average cost of capital.

In assessing potential impairments for our fourth quarter test for 2017, we performed a qualitative assessment to determine whether it is more likely than not that the fair value of goodwill and indefinite-lived trademark are less than the carrying amount. Upon completion of the fourth quarter 2017 annual impairment assessment, we determined that no goodwill or trademark impairment was indicated. As of January 2, 2018, we are not aware of any significant indicators of impairment that exist for our goodwill or trademark that would require additional analysis.

Long-Lived Assets

Long-lived assets, including property and equipment and definite lived intangible assets (other than goodwill and indefinite-lived intangible assets), are reviewed by us for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount may not be recoverable. Long-lived assets are grouped and evaluated for impairment at the lowest level for which there are identifiable cash flows that are independent of the cash flows of other groups of assets. We evaluate such cash flows for individual restaurants and franchise agreements on an undiscounted basis. If it is determined that the carrying amounts of such long-lived assets are not recoverable, the assets are written down to their estimated fair values. We generally estimate fair value using either the land and building real estate value for the respective restaurant or the discounted value of the estimated cash flows associated with the respective restaurant or agreement.

Insurance Reserves

Given the nature of our operating environment, we are subject to workers' compensation and general liability claims. To mitigate a portion of these risks, we maintain insurance for individual claims in excess of deductibles per claim (insurance deductibles range from \$0.25 million to \$0.50 million per occurrence for workers' compensation and are \$0.35 million per occurrence for general liability). We are not the primary obligor for our worker's compensation insurance policy. The amount of loss reserves and loss adjustment expenses is determined based on an estimation process that uses information obtained from both specific and industry data, as well as general economic information. Loss reserves are based on estimates of expected losses for determining reported claims and as the basis for estimating claims incurred but not reported. The estimation process for loss exposure requires us to continuously monitor and evaluate the life cycle of claims. We also monitor the reasonableness of the judgments made in the prior year's estimation process (referred to as a hindsight analysis) and adjust current year assumptions based on the hindsight analysis. We utilize actuarial methods to evaluate open claims and estimate the ongoing development exposure related to workers' compensation and general liability. We are not the primary obligor for our worker's compensation insurance policy, so therefore recording the liability and recoveries gross is not appropriate.

Rent Expense and Deferred Rent Liability

We lease a substantial number of restaurant properties. At inception, each lease is evaluated to determine whether it will be classified as an operating or capital lease. Rent expense on operating leases with scheduled or minimum rent increases is recorded on the straight-line basis over the lease term, which includes the period of time from when we take possession of the leased space until the restaurant opening date (the rent holiday period). Deferred rent liability represents the excess of rent charged to expense over the rent obligations under the lease agreement, as well as leasehold improvements funded by lessor incentives which are amortized as reductions to rent expense over the expected lease term.

Restaurant Closure Charges, Net

We make decisions to close restaurants based on their cash flows, anticipated future profitability and leasing arrangements. We determine if discontinued operations treatment is appropriate and estimate the future obligations, if any, associated with the closure of restaurants and record the corresponding liability at the time the restaurant is closed. These restaurant closure obligations primarily consist of the liability for the present value of future lease obligations, net of estimated sublease income. Restaurant closure charges, net are comprised of direct costs related to the restaurant closure and initial charges associated with the recording of the liability at fair value, accretion of the liability during the period, and any positive or negative adjustments to the liability in subsequent periods as more information becomes available. Changes to the estimated liability for future lease obligations based on new facts and circumstances are considered to be a change in estimate and are recorded prospectively. Accretion expense is recorded in order to appropriately reflect the present value of the lease obligations as of the end of a reporting period. Lease payments made net of sublease income received related to these obligations reduce the overall liability. To the extent that the disposal or abandonment of related property and equipment results in gains or losses, such gains or losses are included in loss on disposal of assets, net in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income, except for gains or losses on the disposal of property and equipment related to the 12 underperforming restaurants, which is included in restaurant closure charges, net on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

Income Taxes

We use the liability method of accounting for income taxes. Deferred income taxes are provided for temporary differences between financial statement and income tax reporting, using tax rates scheduled to be in effect at the time the items giving rise to the deferred tax reserves. We recognize the impact of a tax position in the financial statements if that position is more likely than not of being sustained by the taxing authority. Accordingly, we report a liability for unrecognized tax benefits resulting from uncertain tax positions taken or expected to be taken in a tax return. We recognize interest and penalties, if any, related to unrecognized tax benefits in income tax expense.

We maintain deferred tax liabilities related to trademarks and other indefinite lived assets that are not netted against the deferred tax assets as reversal of the taxable temporary difference cannot serve as a source for realization of the deferred tax assets, because the deferred tax liability will not reverse until some indefinite future period when the assets are either sold or written down due to an impairment. State net operating loss carryforwards begin to expire in 2027. We have determined that we do meet the "more likely than not" threshold that all net operating losses, tax credits and other deferred tax assets will be realized. We considered the weight of both positive and negative evidence and concluded that it is more likely than not that the net deferred tax assets will be realized and that no valuation allowance was required as of the date of acquisition or as of the balance sheet dates presented in this annual report on Form 10-K. Accordingly, a valuation allowance is not required.

Stock-Based Compensation

We measure and recognize compensation expense for all share-based payment awards made to employees based on their estimated grant date fair values using the Black-Scholes option pricing model for stock option grants and the closing price of the underlying common stock on the date of the grant for restricted stock awards. Stock-based compensation expense for our share-based compensation awards is recognized ratably over the vesting period on a straight-line vesting schedule.

In order to calculate stock options' fair values and the associated compensation costs for share-based awards, we utilize the Black-Scholes option pricing model, and we have developed estimates of various inputs including forfeiture rate, expected term, expected volatility and risk-free interest rate. These assumptions generally require significant judgment. The forfeiture rate is based on historical rates and reduces the compensation expense recognized. The expected life of options granted is derived from the average of the contractual term of the option and the vesting period. Expected volatility is estimated using historical data from selected peer public company restaurants. These are selected based on similarities of size and other financial and operational characteristics. Volatility is calculated with reference to the historical daily closing equity prices of peer companies, prior to the grant date, over a period equal to the expected term. We calculate the risk-free interest rate using published U.S. Treasury rates in effect at the time of the grant with similar duration of the expected life of the options. We have not paid any dividends to date, therefore, we use an expected dividend yield of zero for option valuation purposes.

If in the future we determine that another method is more reasonable, or if another method for calculating these input assumptions is prescribed by authoritative guidance, and, therefore, should be used to estimate volatility or expected life, the fair value calculated for stock options could change significantly. Higher volatility and longer expected lives result in an increase to stock-based compensation expense determined at the date of grant. Stock-based compensation expense is included within general and administrative expense.

We estimate forfeiture rates based on an analysis of actual forfeitures, analysis of employee turnover behavior and other factors. Changes in the estimated forfeiture rate can have a significant effect on reported stock-based compensation expense, as the cumulative effect of adjusting the rate for all expense amortization is recognized in the period the forfeiture estimate is changed. If a revised forfeiture rate is higher than the previously estimated forfeiture rate, an adjustment is made that will result in a decrease to the stock-based compensation expense recognized in the financial statements. If a revised forfeiture rate is lower than the previously estimated forfeiture rate, an adjustment is made that will result in an increase to the stock-based compensation expense recognized in the financial statements. We will continue to use significant judgment in evaluating the expected term, volatility and forfeiture rate related to stock-based compensation.

Recently Adopted and Recently Issued Accounting Standards

See Note 2, *Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies*, in the notes to the accompanying consolidated financial statements, included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K, for a description of the recently adopted and recently issued accounting standards.

Management's Use of Non-GAAP Financial Measures

A reconciliation of company restaurant sales to restaurant contribution is provided below (in thousands):

	Successor			Predecessor
	52 Weeks Ended January 2, 2018	53 Weeks Ended January 3, 2017	26 Weeks Ended December 29, 2015	26 Weeks Ended June 30, 2015
Company restaurant sales	\$ 452,148	\$ 434,064	\$ 206,939	\$ 200,676
Restaurant operating expenses	363,228	344,749	163,902	162,178
Restaurant contribution	\$ 88,920	\$ 89,315	\$ 43,037	\$ 38,498
Restaurant contribution margin	19.7%	20.6%	20.8%	19.2%

Table of Contents

The following table sets forth reconciliations of net income (loss) to EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA (in thousands):

	Successor			Predecessor
	52 Weeks Ended January 2, 2018	53 Weeks Ended January 3, 2017	26 Weeks Ended December 29, 2015	26 Weeks Ended June 30, 2015
Net income	\$ 49,871	\$ 20,913	\$ 2,653	\$ 2,104
Non-GAAP adjustments:				
(Benefit) provision for income taxes	(15,824)	15,329	112	740
Interest expense	7,200	6,327	3,652	11,491
Depreciation and amortization	23,362	23,129	11,276	8,249
EBITDA	64,609	65,698	17,693	22,584
Stock-based compensation expense (a)	4,876	4,096	1,498	532
Loss on disposal of assets, net (b)	1,075	312	3	99
Restaurant closure charges, net (c)	191	435	2,015	94
Amortization of favorable and unfavorable lease assets and liabilities, net (d)	(809)	(607)	(364)	3
Debt modification costs (e)	—	—	78	139
Transaction-related costs (f)	—	731	12,972	7,255
Change in fair value of warrant liability (g)	—	—	—	(35)
Pre-opening costs (h)	1,591	731	366	276
Other income (i)	—	—	(220)	—
Adjusted EBITDA	\$ 71,533	\$ 71,396	\$ 34,041	\$ 30,947

(a) Includes non-cash, stock-based compensation.

(b) Loss on disposal of assets, net includes the loss or gain on disposal of assets related to sales-leaseback transactions, sales, retirements and replacement or write-off of leasehold improvements, furniture, fixtures or equipment in the ordinary course of business, net of amortization of deferred gains on assets sales associated with sale-leaseback transactions, gains or losses recorded associated with the sale of company-operated restaurants to franchisees and gains from disposal of assets related to eminent domain.

(c) Includes costs related to future obligations associated with the closure or net sublease shortfall of a restaurant, partially offset by sublease income from leases which are treated as deemed landlord financing.

(d) Includes amortization of favorable lease assets and unfavorable lease liabilities.

(e) Includes costs associated with debt refinancing transactions in March 2015 and August 2015.

(f) Includes costs related to the offer to exchange the Company's common stock for each outstanding Company warrant in August 2016, the strategic sale process which commenced during 2014 and resulted in the March 2015 Stock Purchase Agreement with the Levy Newco Parties and the June 2015 Business Combination consummated pursuant to the Merger Agreement, and costs related to the secondary offering of common stock completed in October 2015.

(g) Relates to fair value adjustments to the warrants to purchase shares of common stock of DTH that had been issued to certain of DTH's equity shareholders, all of which were exchanged for shares of common stock of DTH on March 20, 2015.

(h) Pre-opening costs consist of costs directly associated with the opening of new restaurants and incurred prior to opening, including restaurant labor, supplies, cash and non-cash rent expense and other related pre-opening costs. These are generally incurred over the three to five months prior to opening.

(i) Gain of \$0.2 million recorded in fiscal 2015 based on the amount of the liquidating distribution received in excess of our investment in four public partnerships. See Note 2, Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies, in the notes to the consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K for more information.

ITEM 7A. *Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk*

Interest Rate Risk

We are exposed to market risk from changes in interest rates on our senior credit facility debt, which currently bears interest at variable rates. However, we seek to mitigate our variable interest rate risk on our senior credit facility by entering into an interest rate derivative on a portion of the senior credit facility debt, as discussed above under “Hedging Arrangements.” As of January 2, 2018 (Successor), we had outstanding variable rate borrowings of \$153.0 million. A 100 basis point increase in the effective interest rate applied to this borrowing would result in a pre-tax interest expense increase of approximately \$1.5 million on an annualized basis, excluding the effect of our existing 2016 Interest Rate Cap Agreement.

Commodity Price Risk

We purchase certain products that are affected by commodity prices and are, therefore, subject to price volatility caused by weather, market conditions, potential cross-border taxes and tariffs and other factors which are not considered predictable or within our control. Although these products are subject to changes in commodity prices, certain purchasing contracts or pricing arrangements used contain risk management techniques designed to minimize price volatility. In many cases, we believe we will be able to address material commodity cost increases by adjusting menu pricing or making other operational adjustments that increase productivity. However, increases in commodity prices, without adjustments to menu prices, could increase restaurant operating costs as a percentage of restaurant sales.

Inflation

Inflation has an impact on food, paper, construction, utility, labor and benefits, rent, general and administrative and other costs, all of which can materially impact operations. We have a substantial number of hourly employees who are paid wage rates based on the applicable federal, state or local minimum wage, and increases in the minimum wage will increase our labor costs.

On July 1, 2014, the State of California (where most of our restaurants are located) increased its minimum wage to \$9.00 per hour (from \$8.00 per hour), and it increased to \$10.00 per hour on January 1, 2016. On March 31, 2016, the California Legislature passed legislation which was designed to raise the statewide minimum wage gradually until it reaches \$15.00 per hour in 2022 and it was signed into law on April 4, 2016. Under the new California law, minimum wage increased to \$10.50 per hour in 2017, increased to \$11.00 per hour on January 1, 2018 and then will increase by an additional dollar per hour each calendar year through 2022 when it reaches \$15.00 per hour. Based on our current number of restaurants in California, this is expected to impact 373 restaurants in California of which 252 are company-operated and 121 are franchise-operated.

In addition, in September 2015, the Los Angeles County Board of Supervisors approved increases to the minimum wage to \$15.00 per hour by 2020 with the first phase of the wage increase to \$10.50 effective on July 1, 2016, followed by an increase to \$12.00 per hour on July 1, 2017, \$13.25 on July 1, 2018, and \$14.25 on July 1, 2019 until it reaches \$15.00 per hour on July 1, 2020. Also, in June 2016, the Los Angeles City Council approved a sick paid leave ordinance to provide six days of paid sick leave per year, with carry-over of 72 hours, effective July 1, 2016. These local ordinances impacted 25 company-owned restaurants and eight franchise-owned restaurants in the City of Los Angeles and in the unincorporated areas of the County of Los Angeles.

On March 14, 2016, the Pasadena City Council adopted an ordinance to increase Pasadena’s minimum wage. Beginning on July 1, 2016, employers with 26 or more employees must pay a minimum wage of \$10.50 per hour to all employees who work at least 2 hours per week within Pasadena’s geographic bounds. The minimum wage increased to \$12.00 per hour on July 1, 2017, and will increase to \$13.25 per hour on July 1, 2018. This local ordinance impacted two company-operated restaurants.

On June 7, 2016, San Diego voters voted in favor of an ordinance to increase San Diego's minimum wage rate and allow employees working within the San Diego city limits to earn one hour of paid sick leave for every 30 hours worked. The San Diego City Council certified this minimum wage increase on July 11, 2016 with the increase taking effect on July 11, 2016. Under this ordinance, for any employee who works at least two hours within San Diego city limits, minimum wage increased to \$10.50 per hour on July 11, 2016, \$11.50 per hour in 2017 and beginning 2019, the minimum wage rate will increase annually to an amount that corresponds to the prior year's increase, if any, in the cost of living. In addition, the ordinance provides up to five days of paid sick leave and allows unused sick leave to be carried over to the following year. This ordinance impacted three company-operated restaurants and two franchise-operated restaurants.

On November 8, 2016, Arizona voters voted in favor to increase the state minimum wage to \$10.00 per hour effective January 1, 2017 (from \$8.05 per hour) and to allow employees to earn one hour of paid sick leave for every 30 hours worked effective July 1, 2017. The minimum wage increased to \$10.50 per hour in 2018 and then will increase to \$11.00 per hour in 2019, and

[Table of Contents](#)

\$12.00 per hour in 2020. The law provides up to five days of paid sick leave per year. The new law impacted three company-operated restaurants and 33 franchise-operated restaurants.

On January 1, 2017, Santa Monica voters approved a sick paid leave ordinance to provide 72 hours of paid sick leave per year, effective January 1, 2018. This local ordinance impacted one company-operated restaurant.

Other municipalities may set minimum wages above the applicable federal or state standards. The federal minimum wage has been \$7.25 per hour since July 24, 2009. Additional federally-mandated, state-mandated or locally mandated minimum wages may be raised in the future. Furthermore, on July 1, 2015, the Healthy Workplaces, Healthy Families Act of 2014 went into effect for California employees, which provides up to three days of paid sick leave for employees who work more than 30 days within a year. We may be unable to increase our menu prices in order to pass future increased labor costs on to our customers, in which case our margins would be negatively affected, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. In addition, if our menu prices are increased to cover increased labor costs, the higher prices could adversely affect sales and thereby reduce our margins and profitability.

[Table of Contents](#)

ITEM 8. *Financial Statements and Supplementary Data*

INDEX TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	70
Consolidated Balance Sheets as of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor)	71
Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor)	72
Consolidated Statements of Shareholders' Equity for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor)	73
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor)	74
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements	75

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

To the Shareholders and Board of Directors of
Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. and Del Taco Holdings, Inc.

Opinion on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. (the Company) as of January 2, 2018 and January 3, 2017, the related consolidated statements of comprehensive income, shareholders' equity and cash flows for the 52 week period ended January 2, 2018, 53 week period ended January 3, 2017 and 26 week period ended December 29, 2015 and the related notes and schedules listed in the Index at Item 15(a). We have also audited the accompanying consolidated statements of comprehensive income, shareholders' equity and cash flows of Del Taco Holdings, Inc. for the 26 week period ended June 30, 2015 and the related notes and schedules listed in the Index at Item 15(a) (collectively referred to as the "consolidated financial statements"). In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company at January 2, 2018 and January 3, 2017, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the 52 week period ended January 2, 2018, 53 week period ended January 3, 2017 and 26 week period ended December 29, 2015, and the consolidated results of operations and cash flows of Del Taco Holdings, Inc. for the 26 week period ended June 30, 2015 in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Basis for Opinion

These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. As part of our audits we are required to obtain an understanding of internal control over financial reporting but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.

Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2006.

Irvine, California
March 14, 2018

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.
Consolidated Balance Sheets
(In thousands, except share and per share data)

	Successor	
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017
Assets		
Current assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 6,559	\$ 8,795
Accounts and other receivables, net	3,828	4,141
Inventories	2,712	2,718
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	6,784	4,204
Total current assets	19,883	19,858
Property and equipment, net	156,124	138,320
Goodwill	320,638	320,025
Trademarks	220,300	220,300
Intangible assets, net	21,498	24,782
Other assets, net	3,881	3,872
Total assets	\$ 742,324	\$ 727,157
Liabilities and shareholders' equity		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable	\$ 18,759	\$ 16,427
Other accrued liabilities	35,257	36,653
Current portion of capital lease obligations and deemed landlord financing liabilities	1,415	1,588
Total current liabilities	55,431	54,668
Long-term debt, capital lease obligations and deemed landlord financing liabilities, excluding current portion, net	170,639	173,743
Deferred income taxes	68,574	91,273
Other non-current liabilities	31,431	30,140
Total liabilities	326,075	349,824
Commitments and contingencies (<i>Note 17</i>)		
Shareholders' equity:		
Preferred stock, \$0.0001 par value; 1,000,000 shares authorized; no shares issued and outstanding	—	—
Common stock, \$0.0001 par value; 400,000,000 shares authorized; 38,434,274 shares issued and outstanding at January 2, 2018; 39,153,503 shares issued and outstanding at January 3, 2017	4	4
Additional paid-in capital	349,334	360,131
Accumulated other comprehensive income	14	172
Retained earnings	66,897	17,026
Total shareholders' equity	416,249	377,333
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	\$ 742,324	\$ 727,157

See accompanying notes to consolidated financial statements.

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.
Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income
(In thousands, except share and per share data)

	Successor			Predecessor
	52 Weeks Ended January 2, 2018	53 Weeks Ended January 3, 2017	26 Weeks Ended December 29, 2015	26 Weeks Ended June 30, 2015
Revenue:				
Company restaurant sales	\$ 452,148	\$ 434,064	\$ 206,939	\$ 200,676
Franchise revenue	16,464	15,676	7,328	6,693
Franchise sublease income	2,844	2,343	1,183	1,183
Total revenue	471,456	452,083	215,450	208,552
Operating expenses:				
Restaurant operating expenses:				
Food and paper costs	125,391	120,116	59,263	57,447
Labor and related expenses	145,012	135,725	61,448	61,120
Occupancy and other operating expenses	92,825	88,908	43,191	43,611
General and administrative	38,154	37,220	17,501	14,850
Depreciation and amortization	23,362	23,129	11,276	8,252
Occupancy and other - franchise subleases	2,608	2,207	1,140	1,109
Pre-opening costs	1,591	731	366	276
Restaurant closure charges, net	191	435	2,015	94
Loss on disposal of assets, net	1,075	312	3	99
Total operating expenses	430,209	408,783	196,203	186,858
Income from operations	41,247	43,300	19,247	21,694
Other expense (income), net:				
Interest expense	7,200	6,327	3,652	11,491
Other income	—	—	(220)	—
Transaction-related costs	—	731	12,972	7,255
Debt modification costs	—	—	78	139
Change in fair value of warrant liability	—	—	—	(35)
Total other expense, net	7,200	7,058	16,482	18,850
Income from operations before (benefit) provision for income taxes	34,047	36,242	2,765	2,844
(Benefit) provision for income taxes	(15,824)	15,329	112	740
Net income	49,871	20,913	2,653	2,104
Other comprehensive (loss) income:				
Change in fair value of interest rate cap, net of tax	(162)	172	—	(24)
Reclassification of interest rate cap amortization included in net income	4	—	—	58
Total other comprehensive (loss) income, net	(158)	172	—	34
Comprehensive income	\$ 49,713	\$ 21,085	\$ 2,653	\$ 2,138
Earnings per share:				
Basic	\$ 1.29	\$ 0.54	\$ 0.07	\$ 0.38
Diluted	\$ 1.25	\$ 0.53	\$ 0.07	\$ 0.37
Weighted-average shares outstanding:				
Basic	38,689,508	38,725,541	38,802,425	5,492,417
Diluted	39,949,907	39,274,649	40,249,993	5,610,859

See accompanying notes to consolidated financial statements.

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.
Consolidated Statements of Shareholders' Equity
(In thousands, except share data)

	Del Taco Holdings, Inc. (Predecessor)						
	Preferred Stock	Common Stock		Additional Paid-in Capital	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss	Accumulated Deficit	Total Shareholders' Equity
		Shares	Amount				
Balance at December 30, 2014 Predecessor	\$ —	3,907,835	\$ 39	\$ 110,941	\$ (409)	\$ (29,167)	\$ 81,404
Net income	—	—	—	—	—	2,104	2,104
Other comprehensive income, net of tax	—	—	—	—	34	—	34
Comprehensive income							2,138
Stock-based compensation	—	—	—	532	—	—	532
Exercise and settlement of warrants	—	213,025	2	8,272	—	—	8,274
Exercise of options and distribution of restricted stock units, net of tax withholding	—	237,948	2	(7,535)	—	—	(7,533)
Issuance of common stock	—	2,348,968	24	91,212	—	—	91,236
Balance at June 30, 2015 Predecessor	\$ —	6,707,776	\$ 67	\$ 203,422	\$ (375)	\$ (27,063)	\$ 176,051

	Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. (Successor)						
	Preferred Stock	Common Stock		Additional Paid-in Capital	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income	Retained Earnings (Accumulated Deficit)	Total Shareholders' Equity
		Shares	Amount				
Balance at June 30, 2015 Successor	\$ —	5,127,606	\$ 1	\$ 9,857	\$ —	\$ (6,540)	\$ 3,318
Net income	—	—	—	—	—	2,653	2,653
Other comprehensive income, net of tax	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Comprehensive income							2,653
Common stock of Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. released from possible redemption	—	13,621,279	1	136,212	—	—	136,213
Issuance of common stock	—	20,053,540	2	224,304	—	—	224,306
Issuance of warrants	—	—	—	389	—	—	389
Stock-based compensation	—	—	—	1,498	—	—	1,498
Balance at December 29, 2015 Successor	—	38,802,425	4	372,260	—	(3,887)	368,377
Net income	—	—	—	—	—	20,913	20,913
Other comprehensive income, net of tax	—	—	—	—	172	—	172
Comprehensive income							21,085
Stock-based compensation	—	—	—	4,096	—	—	4,096
Issuance of common stock in exchange for warrants	—	1,533,542	—	—	—	—	—
Issuance of vested restricted stock, net of shares withheld for tax withholding	—	164,336	—	(916)	—	—	(916)
Exercise of stock options	—	500	—	5	—	—	5
Repurchase of common stock and warrants	—	(1,347,300)	—	(15,314)	—	—	(15,314)
Balance at January 3, 2017							

Successor	—	39,153,503	4	360,131	172	17,026	377,333					
Net income	—	—	—	—	—	49,871	49,871					
Other comprehensive loss, net of tax	—	—	—	—	(158)	—	(158)					
Comprehensive income	—	—	—	—	—	—	49,713					
Stock-based compensation	—	—	—	4,876	—	—	4,876					
Issuance of vested restricted stock, net of shares withheld for tax withholding	—	257,518	—	(1,923)	—	—	(1,923)					
Exercise of stock options	—	9,750	—	99	—	—	99					
Repurchase of common stock and warrants	—	(986,497)	—	(13,849)	—	—	(13,849)					
Balance at January 2, 2018												
Successor	\$	—	\$	4	\$	349,334	\$	14	\$	66,897	\$	416,249

See accompanying notes to consolidated financial statements.

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows
(In thousands)

	Successor			Predecessor
	52 Weeks Ended January 2, 2018	53 Weeks Ended January 3, 2017	26 Weeks Ended December 29, 2015	26 Weeks Ended June 30, 2015
Operating activities				
Net income	\$ 49,871	\$ 20,913	\$ 2,653	\$ 2,104
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:				
Depreciation and amortization	23,362	23,129	11,276	8,249
Amortization of favorable and unfavorable lease assets and liabilities, net	(809)	(607)	(364)	3
Amortization of deferred financing costs and interest rate cap	389	392	155	908
Subordinated note interest paid-in-kind	—	—	—	37
Debt modification costs	—	—	78	139
Stock-based compensation	4,876	4,096	1,498	532
Change in fair value of warrant liability	—	—	—	(35)
Deferred income taxes	(22,594)	10,741	88	551
Loss on disposal of assets, net	1,075	312	3	99
Restaurant closure charges, net	379	179	—	—
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:				
Accounts and other receivables, net	313	(921)	8	154
Inventories	6	88	(265)	145
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	(2,580)	(659)	653	(426)
Other assets	(162)	(59)	—	—
Accounts payable	2,332	(404)	(3,309)	4,222
Other accrued liabilities	(1,526)	3,733	3,434	(5,026)
Other non-current liabilities	2,856	(3,387)	1,177	(1,573)
Net cash provided by operating activities	57,788	57,546	17,085	10,083
Investing activities				
Purchases of property and equipment	(50,627)	(45,853)	(18,593)	(14,813)
Proceeds from disposal of property and equipment	9,907	3,423	—	42
Proceeds from the Company's trust account (see Note 3)	—	—	149,989	—
Purchases of other assets	(1,033)	(1,333)	(589)	(513)
Acquisition of franchisees	(1,128)	(3,891)	—	—
Proceeds from sale of company-operated restaurants	2,192	—	—	—
Proceeds from dissolution of investments in partnerships	—	—	1,586	—
Acquisition of Del Taco Holdings, net of cash acquired	—	—	(89,827)	—
Net cash (used in) provided by investing activities	(40,689)	(47,654)	42,566	(15,284)
Financing activities				
Proceeds from term loan, net of debt discount	—	—	—	23,654
Proceeds from deemed landlord financing liabilities	3,925	1,974	1,208	—
Proceeds from issuance of common stock	—	—	35,000	91,236
Repurchase of common stock and warrants	(13,849)	(15,314)	—	—
Payment of tax withholding related to restricted stock vesting, option exercises and distribution of restricted stock units	(1,923)	(916)	—	(7,533)
Payments on term loans	—	—	(227,100)	—
Payments on capital leases and deemed landlord financing	(1,587)	(1,728)	(864)	(831)
Payment on subordinated notes	—	—	—	(108,113)
Proceeds from revolving credit facility, net of debt discount	31,500	24,000	162,556	10,000
Payments on revolving credit facility	(37,500)	(19,000)	(14,000)	(6,000)

Payment for interest rate cap	—	(312)	—	—
Payments for debt issue costs	—	—	(484)	(593)
Repayment of note payable	—	—	(523)	—
Payment of deferred underwriter compensation	—	—	(5,250)	—
Proceeds from exercise of stock options	99	5	—	—
Net cash (used in) provided by financing activities	(19,335)	(11,291)	(49,457)	1,820
(Decrease) increase in cash and cash equivalents	(2,236)	(1,399)	10,194	(3,381)
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of period	8,795	10,194	—	8,553
Cash and cash equivalents at end of period	\$ 6,559	\$ 8,795	\$ 10,194	\$ 5,172
Supplemental cash flow information:				
Cash paid during the period for interest	\$ 6,873	\$ 6,328	\$ 3,216	\$ 13,548
Cash paid during the period for income taxes, net of tax refunds	9,441	3,531	161	46
Supplemental schedule of non-cash activities:				
Accrued property and equipment purchases	\$ 2,305	\$ 64	\$ 306	\$ 1,549
Write-offs against bad debt reserves	—	72	—	—
Amortization of interest rate cap into net income, net of tax	4	—	—	58
Change in other asset for fair value of interest rate cap recorded to other comprehensive (loss) income, net of tax	(162)	172	—	(24)
Warrant liability reclassified to equity upon exercise of warrants	—	—	—	8,274
Issuance of shares for consideration in the acquisition of Del Taco Holdings, Inc.	—	—	189,306	—
Issuance of warrants as payment for working capital loans	—	—	389	—
Common stock of Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. reclassified to equity upon release from possible redemption	—	—	136,213	—

See accompanying notes to consolidated financial statements

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

January 2, 2018

1. Description of Business

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. (f/k/a Levy Acquisition Corp. ("LAC")) is a Delaware corporation headquartered in Lake Forest, California. The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. and its wholly owned subsidiaries (collectively, the "Company" or "Del Taco"). The Company develops, franchises, owns, and operates Del Taco quick-service Mexican-American restaurants. At January 2, 2018, there were 312 company-operated and 252 franchise-operated Del Taco restaurants located in 14 states, including one franchise-operated unit in Guam. At January 3, 2017, there were 310 company-operated and 241 franchise-operated Del Taco restaurants located in 15 states, including one franchise-operated unit in Guam.

The Company was originally incorporated in Delaware on August 2, 2013 as a special purpose acquisition company, formed for the purpose of effecting a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or other similar business combination with one or more businesses. On June 30, 2015 (the "Closing Date"), the Company consummated its business combination with Del Taco Holdings, Inc. ("DTH") pursuant to the agreement and plan of merger dated as of March 12, 2015 by and among LAC, Levy Merger Sub, LLC ("Levy Merger Sub"), LAC's wholly owned subsidiary, and DTH (the "Merger Agreement"). Under the Merger Agreement, Levy Merger Sub merged with and into DTH, with DTH surviving the merger as a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company (the "Business Combination" or "Merger"). In connection with the closing of the Business Combination, the Company changed its name from Levy Acquisition Corp. to Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. See Note 3 for further discussion of the Business Combination.

DTH has no material assets or operations. DTH's direct subsidiary, F&C Restaurant Holding Co. ("F&C RHC") also has no material assets or operations, but was the issuer of subordinated notes in May 2010. F&C RHC's direct subsidiary, Sagittarius Restaurants LLC ("SAG Restaurants"), also has no material assets or operations and was also an issuer of subordinated notes in May 2010. The outstanding balances for the F&C RHC and SAG Restaurants subordinated notes were fully redeemed in March 2015. See Note 8 for additional discussion on the F&C RHC and SAG Restaurants subordinated notes.

2. Basis of Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Basis of Presentation

As a result of the Business Combination, the Company is the acquirer for accounting purposes, and DTH is the acquiree and accounting predecessor. The Company's financial statement presentation distinguishes a "Predecessor" for DTH for periods prior to the Closing Date. The Company is the "Successor" for periods after the Closing Date, which includes consolidation of DTH subsequent to the Business Combination on June 30, 2015. The Merger was accounted for as a business combination using the acquisition method of accounting, and the Successor financial statements reflect a new basis of accounting that is based on the fair value of the net assets acquired. See Note 3 for further discussion of the Business Combination. As a result of the application of the acquisition method of accounting as of the Closing Date, the financial statements for the Predecessor period and for the Successor period are presented on a different basis of accounting and are therefore, not comparable. The historical financial information of Del Taco, formerly LAC, prior to the Business Combination has not been reflected in the financial statements as those amounts have been considered de-minimus.

For the Consolidated Statements of Shareholders' Equity, the Predecessor results reflect the equity balances and activities of DTH at December 30, 2014 through June 30, 2015 prior to the closing of the Business Combination and the Successor results reflect the LAC equity balances at June 30, 2015 prior to the closing of the Business Combination and the activities for Del Taco through January 2, 2018.

The Company's fiscal year ends on the Tuesday closest to December 31. Fiscal years 2017 and 2015 are both a fifty-two week periods. In a fifty-two week fiscal year, the first, second and third quarters each include twelve weeks of operations and the fourth quarter includes sixteen weeks of operations. Fiscal year 2016 is a fifty-three week period. In a fifty-three week fiscal year, the first, second and third quarters each include twelve weeks of operations and the fourth quarter includes seventeen weeks of operations. For fiscal year 2017, the Company's financial statements reflect the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor). For fiscal year 2016, the Company's financial statements reflect the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017.

(Successor). For fiscal year 2015, the Company's financial statements reflect the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor).

Principles of Consolidation

The consolidated financial statements included herein have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America ("U.S. GAAP") and the rules and regulations of Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC"). The accompanying consolidated financial statements include the accounts of the Company and its wholly and majority owned subsidiaries. All intercompany balances and transactions have been eliminated in consolidation.

Use of Estimates

The preparation of the consolidated financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the amounts reported in the consolidated financial statements and accompanying notes. Management believes that such estimates have been based on reasonable and supportable assumptions and the resulting estimates are reasonable for use in the preparation of the consolidated financial statements. Actual results could differ from these estimates. The Company's significant estimates include estimates for impairment of goodwill, intangible assets and property and equipment, valuations provided in business combinations, insurance reserves, restaurant closure reserves, stock-based compensation, contingent liabilities, certain leasing activities and income tax valuation allowances.

SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

Variable Interest Entities

In accordance with Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") 810, *Consolidation*, the Company applies the guidance related to variable interest entities ("VIE"), which defines the process for how an enterprise determines which party consolidates a VIE as primarily a qualitative analysis. The enterprise that consolidates the VIE (the primary beneficiary) is defined as the enterprise with (1) the power to direct activities of the VIE that most significantly affect the VIE's economic performance and (2) the obligation to absorb losses of the VIE or the right to receive benefits from the VIE. The Company franchises its operations through franchise agreements entered into with franchisees and therefore, the Company does not possess any ownership interests in franchise entities or other affiliates. The franchise agreements are designed to provide the franchisee with key decision-making ability to enable it to oversee its operations and to have a significant impact on the success of the franchise, while the Company's decision-making rights are related to protecting the Company's brand. Additionally, the Company held a 1% ownership interest in four public limited partnerships in which the Company served as general partner. The limited partners had substantive kick-out rights over the general partner giving the limited partners power to direct the activities of the limited partnerships. The partnerships were liquidated and dissolved in December 2015. See the *Related Party Transactions* policy below for more information. Based upon the Company's analysis of all the relevant facts and considerations of the franchise entities and the four public limited partnerships, the Company has concluded that the franchise agreements are not variable interest entities and the four public limited partnerships were not variable interest entities.

Revenue Recognition

Company restaurant sales from the operation of company-operated restaurants are recognized when food and service is delivered to customers. Franchise revenue comprise (i) development fees, (ii) franchise fees, (iii) on-going royalties and (iv) renewal fees. Development and franchise fees, portions of which are collected in advance and are non-refundable, received pursuant to individual development agreements, grant the right to develop franchise-operated restaurants in future periods in specific geographic areas. Both development fees and franchise fees are deferred and recognized as revenue when the Company has substantially fulfilled its obligation pursuant to the development agreement. Development fees and franchise fees are generally recognized as revenue upon the opening of a franchise restaurant or upon termination of the development agreement with the franchisee. Deferred development fees and deferred franchise fees, which are included in other non-current liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets totaled \$1.3 million and \$1.4 million as of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), respectively. Royalties from franchise-operated restaurants are based on a percentage of franchise restaurant sales and are recognized in the period the related franchise-operated restaurant sales occur. Renewal fees are recognized when a

renewal agreement becomes effective. The Company reports revenue net of sales taxes collected from customers and remitted to governmental taxing authorities. Promotional allowances totaled approximately \$14.2 million during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), \$13.6 million during the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and \$5.8 million and \$5.4 million during the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), respectively. Franchise sublease income is comprised of rental income associated with properties leased or subleased to franchisees and is recognized as revenue on an accrual basis.

Gift Cards

The Company sells gift cards to customers in its restaurants. The gift cards sold to customers have no stated expiration dates and are subject to potential escheatment laws in the various jurisdictions in which the Company operates. Deferred gift card income totaled \$2.5 million and \$2.4 million as of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), respectively. The current portion of the deferred gift card income is included in other accrued liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets and totaled \$1.3 million and \$1.2 million as of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), respectively. The non-current portion of the deferred gift card income was \$1.2 million as of both January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor) and is included in other non-current liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets. The Company recognizes revenue from gift cards: (i) when the gift card is redeemed by the customer; or (ii) under the delayed recognition method, when the likelihood of the gift card being redeemed by the customer is remote (gift card breakage) and the Company determines that there is not a legal obligation to remit the unredeemed gift cards to the relevant jurisdiction. The determination of the gift card breakage rate is based upon Company specific historical redemption patterns. Recognized gift card breakage revenue was not significant to any period presented in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income. Any future revisions to the estimated breakage rate may result in changes in the amount of breakage revenue recognized in future periods but is not expected to be significant.

Cash and Cash Equivalents

The Company considers short-term, highly liquid investments with original maturities of three months or less when purchased to be cash equivalents. Amounts receivable from credit card issuers are typically converted to cash within 2 to 4 days of the original sales transaction and are considered to be cash equivalents.

Accounts and Other Receivables, Net

Accounts and other receivables, net consist primarily of receivables from franchisees, sublease tenants, a vendor and landlords. Receivables from franchisees include sublease rents, royalties, services and contractual marketing fees associated with the franchise agreements. Sublease tenant receivables relate to subleased properties where the Company is a party and obligated on the primary lease agreement. The vendor receivable is for earned reimbursements from a vendor and the landlord receivables are for earned landlord reimbursement related to restaurants opened. The allowance for doubtful accounts is based on historical experience and a review on a specific identification basis of the collectability of existing receivables and totaled \$0.1 million as of both January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor).

Vendor Allowances

The Company receives support from one of its vendors in the form of reimbursements. The reimbursements are agreed upon with the vendor, but do not represent specific, incremental, identifiable costs incurred by the Company in selling the vendor's products. Such reimbursements are recorded as a reduction of the costs of purchasing the vendor's products. The non-current portion of reimbursements received by the Company in advance is included in other non-current liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets and totaled \$1.1 million and \$1.6 million as of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), respectively. The current portion of these reimbursements is included in other accrued liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets and totaled \$0.4 million as of both January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor).

Inventories

Inventories, consisting of food items, packaging and beverages, are valued at the lower of cost (first-in, first-out method) or market.

Property and Equipment

Property and equipment includes land, buildings, leasehold improvements, restaurant and other equipment, and buildings under capital leases. Land, leasehold improvements, property and equipment acquired in business combinations are initially recorded at their estimated fair value. Land, leasehold improvements, property and equipment acquired or constructed in the normal course of business are initially recorded at cost. The Company provides for depreciation and amortization based on the estimated useful lives of assets using the straight-line method.

Estimated useful lives for property and equipment are as follows:

Buildings	20–35 years
Leasehold improvements	Shorter of useful life (typically 20 years) or lease term
Buildings under capital leases	Shorter of useful life (typically 20 years) or lease term
Restaurant and other equipment	3–15 years

The estimated useful lives for leasehold improvements are based on the shorter of the estimated useful lives of the assets or the related lease term, which generally includes reasonably assured option periods expected to be exercised by the Company when the Company would suffer an economic penalty if not exercised. Depreciation and amortization expense associated with property and equipment totaled \$21.0 million for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), \$20.6 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and \$10.1 million and \$7.1 million for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), respectively. These amounts include \$1.2 million for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), \$1.4 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and \$0.8 million and \$0.3 million for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), respectively, related to buildings under capital leases. Accumulated depreciation and amortization associated with property and equipment includes \$2.5 million and \$2.2 million related to buildings under capital leases as of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), respectively.

The Company capitalizes construction costs which consist of internal payroll and payroll related costs and travel costs related to the successful acquisition, development, design and construction of the Company's new restaurants. Capitalized construction costs totaled \$1.6 million for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), \$1.3 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), respectively and \$0.5 million for both the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and June 30, 2015 (Predecessor). If the Company subsequently makes a determination that a site for which development costs have been capitalized will not be acquired or developed, any previously capitalized development costs are expensed and included in general and administrative expenses in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income. The Company capitalizes interest in connection with the construction of its restaurants. Interest capitalized totaled approximately \$0.1 million for both the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) and the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and \$25,000 and \$40,000 for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), respectively.

Gains and losses on the disposal of assets are recorded as the difference between the net proceeds received and net carrying values of the assets disposed and are included in loss on disposal of assets, net in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

Deferred Financing Costs

Deferred financing costs represent third-party debt costs that are capitalized and amortized to interest expense over the associated term using the effective interest method. Deferred financing costs, along with lender debt discount, are presented net of the related debt balances on the consolidated balance sheets.

Goodwill and Trademarks

The Company's goodwill and trademarks are not amortized, but tested annually for impairment and tested more frequently for impairment if events and circumstances indicate that the asset might be impaired. The Company conducts annual goodwill and trademark impairment tests in the fourth quarter of each fiscal year or whenever an indicator of impairment exists.

In assessing potential goodwill impairment, the Company has the option to first assess the qualitative factors to determine whether events or circumstances indicate that it is more likely than not that the fair value of net assets, including goodwill, is less than its carrying amount. If the qualitative factors indicate that it is more likely than not that the fair value of net assets, including goodwill, is less than its carrying amount, the Company performs a two-step impairment test of goodwill. In the first step, the Company estimates the fair value of net assets, including goodwill, and compares it to the carrying value of net assets, including goodwill. If the carrying value exceeds the estimated fair value of net assets, including goodwill, the second step is performed to measure the amount of the impairment loss, if any. In the second step, the amount of the impairment loss is the excess of the carrying amount of the goodwill over its implied fair value.

The methods the Company uses to estimate fair value include discounted future cash flows analysis and market valuation based on similar companies. Key assumptions included in the cash flow model include future revenues, operating costs, working capital changes, capital expenditures and a discount rate that approximates the Company's weighted average cost of capital.

In assessing potential impairments for the fourth quarter test for 2017, the Company performed a qualitative assessment to determine whether it is more likely than not that the fair value of goodwill or indefinite-lived trademark are less than the carrying amount. Upon completion of the fourth quarter 2017 annual impairment assessment, the Company determined that no goodwill or trademark impairment was indicated. As of January 2, 2018, the Company is not aware of any significant indicators of impairment that exist for goodwill or trademark that would require additional analysis.

Intangible Assets, Net

Intangible assets primarily include favorable lease assets and franchise rights. Favorable lease assets represent the fair values of acquired lease contracts having contractual rents that are favorable compared to fair market rents as of the Closing Date of the Business Combination, and are amortized on a straight-line basis over the remaining lease term to expense in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income. Franchise rights, which represent the fair value of franchise agreements based on the projected royalty revenue stream as of the Closing Date of the Business Combination, are amortized on a straight-line basis to depreciation and amortization expense in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income over the remaining term of the franchise agreements.

Other Assets, Net

Other assets, net consist of security deposits and other capitalized costs. The Company capitalizes certain computer software and software development costs incurred in connection with developing or obtaining computer software for internal use when both the preliminary project stage is completed and it is probable that the software will be used as intended. Capitalized software costs include only (i) external direct costs of materials and services utilized in developing or obtaining computer software, and (ii) compensation and related benefits for employees who are directly associated with the software projects. Capitalized software costs are amortized over the estimated useful life, typically 3 years. The net carrying value of capitalized software costs for the Company totaled \$2.1 million and \$2.0 million as of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), respectively, and is included in other assets, net in the consolidated balance sheets. Capitalized software costs totaled \$1.0 million for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), \$1.3 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and \$0.6 million and \$0.5 million for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), respectively. Amortization expenses totaled \$1.0 million for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), \$0.9 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and \$0.4 million for both the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and June 30, 2015 (Predecessor).

Long-Lived Assets

Long-lived assets, including property and equipment and definite lived intangible assets (other than goodwill and indefinite-lived intangible assets), are reviewed by the Company for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount may not be recoverable. Long-lived assets are grouped and evaluated for impairment at the lowest level for which there are identifiable cash flows that are independent of the cash flows of other groups of assets. The Company evaluates such cash flows for individual restaurants and franchise agreements on an undiscounted basis. If it is determined that the carrying amounts of such long-lived assets are not recoverable, the assets are written down to their estimated fair values. The Company generally estimates fair value using either the land and building real estate value for the respective restaurant or the discounted value of the estimated cash flows associated with the respective restaurant or agreement.

Rent Expense and Deferred Rent Liability

The Company has non-cancelable lease agreements for certain restaurant land and buildings under terms ranging up to 35 years, with one to four options to extend the lease generally for five to ten years per option period. At inception, each lease is evaluated to determine whether it will be classified as an operating or capital lease. Certain leases provide for contingent rentals based on percentages of net sales or have other provisions obligating the Company to pay related property taxes and certain other expenses. Contingent rentals are generally based on sales levels in excess of stipulated amounts as defined in the lease agreement, and thus are not considered minimum lease payments and are included in rent expense as incurred. Certain leases contain fixed and determinable escalation clauses for which the Company recognizes rental expense under these leases on the straight-line basis over the lease terms, which includes the period of time from when the Company takes possession of the leased space until the restaurant opening date (the rent holiday period), and the cumulative expense recognized on the straight-line basis in excess of the cumulative payments is included in other non-current liabilities. In addition, the Company subleases certain buildings to franchisees and other unrelated third parties, which are classified as operating leases.

In some cases, the land and building the Company will lease requires construction to ready the space for its intended use, and in certain cases, the Company has involvement with the construction of leased assets. The construction period begins when the Company executes the lease agreement with the landlord and continues until the space is substantially complete and ready for its intended use. In accordance with ASC 840, *Leases*, the Company must consider the nature and extent of its involvement during the construction period.

The Company may expend cash for structural additions on leased premises that may be reimbursed in whole or in part by landlords as construction contributions pursuant to agreed-upon terms in the leases. Depending on the specifics of the leased space and the lease agreement, the amounts paid for structural components will be recorded during the construction period as construction-in-progress and the landlord construction contributions will be recorded as a deferred rent liability. Upon completion of construction for those leases that meet certain criteria, the lease may qualify for sale-leaseback treatment. For these leases, the deferred rent liability and the associated construction-in-progress will be removed and any gain on sale will be recorded as deferred income and amortized over the lease term to gain on disposal of assets and any loss on sale will be expensed immediately to loss on disposal of assets, net. If the lease does not qualify for sale-leaseback treatment, the deferred rent liability will be reclassified to a deemed landlord financing liability and will be amortized over the lease term based on the rent payments designated in the lease agreement with rent payments applied to deemed landlord financing liability and interest expense.

Unfavorable lease liabilities represent the fair value of acquired lease contracts having contractual rents that are unfavorable compared to fair market rents and are amortized on a straight-line basis over the expected lease term to expense in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income. As of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), unfavorable lease liabilities had a gross carrying value of \$20.6 million and \$21.0 million with accumulated amortization of \$6.1 million and \$3.9 million, respectively. The Company reclassified \$2.6 million of unfavorable lease liabilities during the fourth quarter of fiscal 2015 related to the 12 closed underperforming locations and re-characterized the amount as restaurant closure liability, as described in Note 4. Amortization credits recorded for unfavorable lease liabilities were \$2.7 million during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), \$2.6 million during the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and \$1.3 million and \$0.3 million during the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), respectively. The weighted-average amortization period as of January 2, 2018 (Successor) for unfavorable

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

lease liabilities equaled 7.9 years . The estimated future amortization for unfavorable lease liabilities for the next five fiscal years is as follows (in thousands):

	Unfavorable Lease Liabilities
2018	\$ 2,273
2019	2,055
2020	1,913
2021	1,630
2022	1,452

Insurance Reserves

Given the nature of the Company's operating environment, the Company is subject to workers' compensation and general liability claims. To mitigate a portion of these risks, the Company maintains insurance for individual claims in excess of deductibles per claim (the Company's insurance deductibles range from \$0.25 million to \$0.50 million per occurrence for workers' compensation and are \$0.35 million per occurrence for general liability). The Company is not the primary obligor for its worker's compensation insurance policy. The amount of loss reserves and loss adjustment expenses is determined based on an estimation process that uses information obtained from both Company-specific and industry data, as well as general economic information. Loss reserves are based on estimates of expected losses for determining reported claims and as the basis for estimating claims incurred but not reported. The estimation process for loss exposure requires management to continuously monitor and evaluate the life cycle of claims. Management also monitors the reasonableness of the judgments made in the prior year's estimation process (referred to as a hindsight analysis) and adjusts current year assumptions based on the hindsight analysis. The Company utilizes actuarial methods to evaluate open claims and estimate the ongoing development exposure related to workers' compensation and general liability.

Advertising Costs

Franchisees pay a monthly fee to the Company of 4% of their restaurants' net sales as reimbursement for advertising and promotional services that the Company provides. Fees received in advance of payment for provided services are included in other accrued liabilities and were \$0.3 million and \$0.7 million at January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), respectively. Company-operated restaurants contribute to the advertising fund on the same basis as franchise-operated restaurants. At January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), the Company had an additional \$0.4 million and \$1.0 million , respectively, accrued for this requirement.

Production costs for radio and television advertising are expensed when the commercials are initially aired. Costs of distribution of advertising are charged to expense on the date the advertising is aired or distributed. These costs, as well as other marketing-related expenses for advertising are included in occupancy and other operating expenses in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income. Advertising expenses for the Company were \$18.1 million for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), \$17.2 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and \$7.6 million and \$8.7 million for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), respectively.

Pre-opening Costs

Pre-opening costs, which include restaurant labor, supplies, cash and non-cash rent expense and other costs incurred prior to the opening of a new restaurant are expensed as incurred. Pre-opening costs were \$1.6 million for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), \$0.7 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and \$0.4 million and \$0.3 million for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), respectively.

Restaurant Closure Charges, Net

The Company makes decisions to close restaurants based on their cash flows, anticipated future profitability and leasing arrangements. The Company determines if discontinued operations treatment is appropriate and estimates the future obligations, if any, associated with the closure of restaurants and records the corresponding restaurant closure liability at the time the restaurant is closed. These restaurant closure obligations primarily consist of the liability for the present value of future lease obligations, net of estimated sublease income. Restaurant closure charges, net are comprised of direct costs related to the restaurant closure and initial charges associated with the recording of the liability at fair value, accretion of the restaurant closure liability during the period, any positive or negative adjustments to the restaurant closure liability in subsequent periods as more information becomes available and sublease income from leases which are treated as deemed landlord financing. Changes to the estimated liability for future lease obligations based on new facts and circumstances are considered to be a change in estimate and are recorded prospectively. Accretion expense is recorded in order to appropriately reflect the present value of the lease obligations as of the end of a reporting period. Lease payments net of sublease income received related to these obligations reduce the overall liability. To the extent that the disposal or abandonment of related property and equipment results in gains or losses, such gains or losses are included in loss on disposal of assets, net in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income, except for gains or losses on the disposal of property and equipment related to the 12 underperforming restaurants, which are included in restaurant closure charges, net on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

Stock-Based Compensation Expense

The Company measures and recognizes compensation expense for all share-based payment awards made to employees based on their estimated grant date fair values using the Black-Scholes option pricing model for option grants and the closing price of the underlying common stock on the date of the grant for restricted stock awards. Stock-based compensation expense for the Company's stock-based compensation awards is recognized ratably over the vesting period on a straight-line basis.

Income Taxes

The Company uses the liability method of accounting for income taxes. Deferred income taxes are provided for temporary differences between financial statement and income tax reporting, using tax rates scheduled to be in effect at the time the items giving rise to the deferred taxes reverse. The Company recognizes the impact of a tax position in the financial statements if that position is more likely than not of being sustained by the taxing authority. Accordingly, the Company reports a liability for unrecognized tax benefits resulting from uncertain tax positions taken or expected to be taken in a tax return. The Company recognizes interest and penalties, if any, related to unrecognized tax benefits in income tax expense.

Derivative Instruments and Hedging Activities

The Company is exposed to variability in future cash flows resulting from fluctuations in interest rates related to its variable rate debt. As part of its overall strategy to manage the level of exposure to the risk of fluctuations in interest rates, the Company has used various interest rate contracts including interest rate caps. The Company recognizes all derivative instruments as either assets or liabilities at fair value in the consolidated balance sheets. When they qualify as hedging instruments, the Company designates interest rate caps as cash flow hedges of forecasted variable rate interest payments on certain debt principal balances.

For derivative instruments that are designated and qualify as cash flow hedges, the effective portion of the gain or loss on the derivative is reported as a component of other comprehensive income and reclassified into earnings in the same period or periods during which the hedged transaction affects earnings. Gains and losses on the derivative representing hedge ineffectiveness are recognized in current earnings.

The Company enters into interest rate derivative contracts with major banks and is exposed to losses in the event of nonperformance by these banks. The Company anticipates, however, that these banks will be able to fully satisfy their obligations under the contracts. Accordingly, the Company does not obtain collateral or other security to support the contracts.

Contingencies

The Company recognizes liabilities for contingencies when an exposure that indicates it is probable that an asset has been impaired or that a liability has been incurred and the amount of impairment or loss can be reasonably estimated. The Company's ultimate legal and financial liability with respect to such matters cannot be estimated with certainty and requires the use of estimates. When the reasonable estimate is a range, the recorded loss will be the best estimate within the range. The Company records legal settlement costs when those costs are probable and reasonably estimable.

Comprehensive Income (Loss)

Comprehensive income (loss) includes changes in equity from transactions and other events and circumstances from nonoperational sources, including, among other things, the Company's unrealized gains and losses on effective interest rate caps which are included in other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax.

Segment Information

An operating segment is defined as a component of an enterprise that engages in business activities from which it may earn revenues and incur expenses, and about which separate financial information is regularly evaluated by the Company's chief operating decision makers in deciding how to allocate resources. Similar operating segments can be aggregated into a single operating segment if the businesses are similar. Management has determined that the Company has one operating segment, and therefore one reportable segment. The Company's chief operating decision maker (CODM) is its Chief Executive Officer; its CODM reviews financial performance and allocates resources at a consolidated level on a recurring basis.

Related Party Transactions

Of the 424,439 warrants purchased during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), 400,000 warrants were purchased from PW Acquisitions, LP, a related party, at \$3.75 per warrant, representing a 5% discount from the closing price of \$3.95 per warrant on the transaction date. A member of the Company's Board of Directors is the chief executive officer and managing member of the general partner of PW Acquisitions, LP.

The Company previously entered into long-term leases for 22 Del Taco restaurants whereby the lessors were one of four public partnerships where the Company served as general partner with a 1% ownership interest. The leases required monthly rent payments in an amount equal to 12% of gross sales which were recorded within occupancy and other operating expenses in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income and totaled \$1.4 million for both the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and June 30, 2015 (Predecessor).

The Company recorded a fair value adjustment through the initial purchase price allocation, as described in Note 3, of \$1.5 million for the estimated fair value of its investment in the four public partnerships.

On July 24, 2015, the four public partnerships entered into an agreement to sell all of the properties, subject to the approval by a majority in interest of the limited partners in each of the public partnerships, to a third party that is not affiliated with the Company. The sale of the properties included new long-term leases between the Company and the third party buyer and was approved by the respective limited partners on November 23, 2015. On December 14, 2015, the four public partnerships consummated the sale, and were subsequently liquidated and dissolved and the assets of the respective partnerships were distributed pursuant to the terms of their respective partnership agreements. During the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor), the Company recorded a gain of \$0.2 million, included in other income in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income, based on the approximate \$1.8 million distribution received in excess of the \$1.6 million carrying value of its investment in the partnerships.

At December 30, 2014 (Predecessor), DTH had \$108.1 million of subordinated notes outstanding due to its three largest shareholders that bore interest at 13.0%. On March 20, 2015, DTH used proceeds from the Step 1 of the Business Combination, as described in Note 3, a \$10.0 million revolver borrowing and amended term loan proceeds of \$25.1 million to fully redeem the then outstanding balance of \$111.2 million of subordinated notes. Interest expense related to subordinated notes was \$3.1

million for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor). See Note 8 for further discussion regarding the subordinated notes.

Fair Value of Financial Instruments

The Company measures fair value using the exchange price that would be received for an asset or paid to transfer a liability (an exit price) in the principal or most advantageous market for the asset or liability in an orderly transaction between market participants on the measurement date. The Company uses valuation techniques that maximize the use of observable inputs and minimize the use of unobservable inputs. Based on the underlying inputs, each fair value measurement in its entirety is reported in one of the three tiers in the fair value hierarchy, which prioritizes the inputs used in measuring fair value. These tiers include:

- Level 1, defined as observable inputs such as quoted prices in active markets;
- Level 2, defined as inputs other than quoted prices in active markets that are either directly or indirectly observable; and
- Level 3, defined as unobservable inputs which reflect the Company's own estimates of assumptions that market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability. Valuation techniques may include the use of third-party pricing services, option pricing models, discounted cash flow models and similar techniques.

Concentration of Risks

Financial instruments that potentially subject the Company to a concentration of credit risk are cash and cash equivalents. The Company maintains its day-to-day operating cash balances in non-interest-bearing accounts. Although the Company at times maintains balances that exceed amounts insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, it has not experienced any losses related to these balances and management believes the credit risk to be minimal.

The Company extends credit to franchisees for franchise and advertising fees on customary credit terms, which generally do not require collateral or other security. In addition, management believes there is no concentration of risk with any single franchisee or small group of franchisees whose failure or nonperformance would materially affect the Company's results of operations.

The Company has entered into a long-term purchase agreement with a distributor for delivery of essentially all food and paper supplies to all company-operated and franchise-operated restaurants except for one location in Guam. Disruption in shipments from this distributor could have a material adverse effect on the results of operations and financial condition of the Company. However, management of the Company believes sufficient alternative distributors exist in the marketplace although it may take some time to enter into replacement distribution arrangements and the cost of distribution may increase as a result.

As of January 2, 2018, Del Taco operated and franchised a total of 373 restaurants in California (252 company-owned and 121 franchise-operated locations). As a result, the Company is particularly susceptible to adverse trends and economic conditions in California. In addition, given this geographic concentration, negative publicity regarding any of the restaurants in California could have a material adverse effect on the Company's business and operations, as could other regional occurrences such as local strikes, fires, earthquakes or other natural disasters.

Recently Adopted Accounting Standards

In January 2017, the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") issued Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") No. 2017-01, *Business Combinations (Topic 804): Clarifying the Definition of a Business*. This ASU clarifies the definition of a business with the objective of adding guidance to assist entities with evaluating whether certain transactions should be accounted for as acquisitions or disposals of assets or businesses. The Company elected, as permitted by the standard, to early adopt ASU 2017-01 in the third quarter of 2017. The adoption of ASU 2017-01 did not have a material impact to the Company's consolidated financial statements.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-09, *Compensation-Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting*, which is intended to simplify various aspects of accounting for share-based compensation arrangements, including the income tax impact, classification on the statement of cash flows and forfeitures. This standard is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within that reporting period, with early adoption permitted. As ASU 2016-09 requires recognition of certain tax benefits associated with stock-based

compensation on a discrete basis, the Company anticipates that its effective tax rate may vary from quarter to quarter depending on the Company's stock price in each period. The Company anticipates that ASU 2016-09 will potentially increase or lower its effective tax rate, relative to the U.S. statutory rate, depending on the amount of stock-based compensation deductible for tax related to the vesting of restricted stock awards or exercise of stock options as compared to cumulative stock-based compensation recorded. The Company adopted ASU 2016-09 during the first fiscal quarter of 2017. The Company will continue to estimate forfeitures.

Recently Issued Accounting Standards

In August 2017, the FASB issued ASU 2017-12, *Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815): Targeted Improvements to Accounting for Hedging Activities*, which amends and simplifies existing guidance in order to allow companies to more accurately present the economic effects of risk management activities in the financial statements. The standard is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018, including interim periods within those years. Early adoption is permitted. The Company is currently evaluating the impact of the standard on its consolidated financial statements and related disclosures.

In January 2017, the FASB issued ASU No. 2017-04, *Intangibles - Goodwill and Other (Topic 350): Simplifying the Test for Goodwill Impairment*. The standard simplifies the subsequent measurement of goodwill, requiring only a single-step quantitative test to identify and measure impairment based on the excess of a reporting unit's carrying amount over its fair value. A qualitative assessment may still be completed first for an entity to determine if a quantitative impairment test is necessary. This standard is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019, with early adoption permitted for interim or annual goodwill impairment tests performed on testing dates after January 1, 2017. The standard requires adoption on a prospective basis. The adoption of this standard is not expected to have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial statements.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-04, *Liabilities-Extinguishment of Liabilities (Subtopic 405-20): Recognition of Breakage for Certain Prepaid Stored-Value Products*, which is designed to provide guidance and eliminate diversity in the accounting for the derecognition of financial liabilities related to certain prepaid stored-value products using a revenue-like breakage model. This standard is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017, and interim periods within those fiscal years, with early adoption permitted. This standard is to be applied retrospectively or using a cumulative effect transition method as of the date of adoption. The Company is currently evaluating the impact of the standard on its consolidated financial statements and related disclosures as well as the expected adoption method.

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-02, *Leases (Topic 842)*. This guidance will result in key changes to lease accounting and will aim to bring leases onto balance sheets to give investors, lenders, and other financial statement users a more comprehensive view of a company's long-term financial obligations as well as the assets it owns versus leases. The new leasing standard will be effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018, and for interim periods within those fiscal years. The new guidance requires a modified retrospective transition approach for all leases existing at, or entered into after, the date of initial application, with certain practical expedients available. Based on a preliminary assessment, the Company expects that substantially all of its operating lease commitments will be subject to the new guidance and recognized as operating lease liabilities and right-of-use assets upon adoption, resulting in a material increase in the assets and liabilities on the Company's consolidated balance sheets. The Company is continuing its evaluation, which may identify additional impacts this standard will have on its consolidated financial statements and related disclosures. The Company will adopt ASU 2016-02 during the first quarter of fiscal 2019.

In May 2014, the FASB issued ASU No. 2014-09, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)*, which provides a comprehensive new revenue recognition model that requires a company to recognize revenue in an amount that reflects the consideration it expects to receive for the transfer of promised goods or services to its customers. The standard also requires additional disclosure regarding the nature, amount, timing and uncertainty of revenue and cash flows arising from contracts with customers. This ASU is effective for annual periods and interim periods beginning after December 15, 2017. ASU 2014-09 is to be applied retrospectively or using a cumulative effect transition method. The Company will adopt ASU 2014-09 in fiscal year 2018, using the modified retrospective method of adoption.

ASU 2014-09 will not materially impact the recognition of company restaurant sales or franchise royalty income from franchisees included in franchise revenue. Franchise sublease income is not within the scope of this new guidance.

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

The adoption of ASU 2014-09 will change the timing of the recognition of initial franchise fees, including franchise and development fees, and renewal fees, both included in franchise revenue in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income. Currently, initial franchise fees are recognized when all material obligations have been performed and conditions have been satisfied, typically when operations of a new franchise restaurant have commenced, and renewal fees are recognized when a renewal agreement becomes effective. ASU 2014-09 requires franchise and renewal fees to be deferred and recognized over the term of the related franchise agreement for the respective restaurant. The impact of the deferral of initial franchise and renewal fees received in a given year may be offset by the recognition of revenue from fees retrospectively deferred from prior years. Upon adoption, the Company will record approximately \$1.0 million as a cumulative effect adjustment to opening retained earnings and deferred revenue as of January 3, 2018 (the first day of fiscal 2018) related to franchise and renewal fees previously recognized since the Business Combination on June 30, 2015. During fiscal 2017 and 2016, the Company recorded initial franchise and renewal fees of \$0.6 million and \$0.3 million, respectively, as component of franchise revenue in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

The adoption of the new guidance will change the reporting of advertising fund contributions from franchisees and the related advertising fund expenditures, which are not currently included in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income. ASU 2014-09 requires these advertising fund contributions and expenditures to be reported on a gross basis in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income, which will have an impact to our total revenues and expenses. However, the Company expects such advertising fund contributions and expenditures will be largely offsetting and therefore does not expect a significant impact on its reported net income. Franchise contributions to the Company's advertising programs for fiscal 2017 and 2016 were \$12.7 million and \$12.1 million, respectively.

Additionally, certain other franchise expenses have been recorded net of the related fees received from franchisees. Under ASU 2014-09, the Company will include these revenues and expenditures on a gross basis within the consolidated statements of comprehensive income. While this change will materially impact the gross amount of reported franchise revenue and related expenses on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income, the impact will be an offsetting increase to both revenue and expense such that there will not be a significant, if any, impact on operating income and net income. Other franchise fees received from franchisees for fiscal 2017 and 2016 were \$0.8 million and \$0.8 million, respectively.

3. Business Combination

On June 30, 2015, the Company and DTH completed the Business Combination pursuant to the Merger Agreement under which the Company's wholly-owned subsidiary, Levy Merger Sub, merged with and into DTH, with DTH surviving the merger as a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company.

Concurrent with the execution of the Merger Agreement, Levy Epic Acquisition Company, LLC ("Levy Newco"), Levy Epic Acquisition Company II, LLC ("Levy Newco II" and with Levy Newco, the "Levy Newco Parties"), DTH and the DTH stockholders entered into a stock purchase agreement (the "Stock Purchase Agreement"). Pursuant to the Stock Purchase Agreement, the Levy Newco Parties agreed to purchase 2,348,968 shares of DTH common stock from DTH for \$91.2 million in cash, and to purchase 740,564 shares of DTH common stock directly from existing DTH shareholders for \$28.8 million in cash (the "Initial Investment"). As a result of this Initial Investment, an aggregate of 3,089,532 shares of DTH common stock was purchased by the Levy Newco Parties for total cash consideration of \$120.0 million. Concurrent with the consummation of the Initial Investment, DTH increased its borrowing capacity under its existing term loan credit facility by \$25.1 million. Proceeds from the increased borrowings under the term loan, a \$10.0 million revolver borrowing and the \$91.2 million received by DTH from the sale of DTH common stock to the Levy Newco Parties was used to fully repay the outstanding balance of DTH's subordinated notes (see Note 8), and pay approximately \$15.7 million of transaction costs, which included \$7.5 million of employee withholding taxes resulting from the acceleration of outstanding stock options and restricted stock units due to the change in control triggered by the Initial Investment. Employee equity redemptions were exchanged for such withholding taxes. The transactions described in this paragraph are hereafter collectively referred to as "Step 1."

Also concurrent with Step 1, the Company entered into common stock purchase agreements pursuant to which certain investors committed to acquire 3,500,000 shares of the Company's common stock upon the closing of the Business Combination for total consideration of \$35 million (the "Step 2 Investment"). The additional funds provided by these investors were used as additional cash consideration in the Business Combination.

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

The consideration for the Business Combination was provided by (1) the funds remaining in the Company’s trust account of \$150 million after Delaware franchise taxes, stockholder redemptions, and \$10.2 million of expenses paid for by the Company, (2) the \$35 million provided by the Step 2 Investment, and (3) shares of the Company’s common stock. The Levy Newco Parties received only stock merger consideration in the Business Combination. The common stock purchase agreements entered into in connection with the Step 1 Investment and the closing of the Business Combination is hereafter referred to as “Step 2.” Step 1 and Step 2 are collectively referred to herein as the “Transactions.”

Step 2 is accounted for as a business combination under the scope of the FASB’s ASC 805, *Business Combinations*, or ASC 805. Pursuant to ASC 805, the Company has been determined to be the accounting acquirer based on the evaluation of the following facts and circumstances:

- The Company paid cash and equity consideration for all of the equity in DTH;
- Investments by the Company and Levy Newco Parties were considered multiple arrangements that should be treated as a single transaction for accounting purposes; and
- The existing stockholders of the Company and the Levy Newco Parties retain relatively more voting rights in the combined company than the historical DTH stockholders.

DTH constitutes a business, with inputs, processes, and outputs. Accordingly, the acquisition of DTH constitutes the acquisition of a business for purposes of ASC 805, and due to the change in control from the merger, is accounted for using the acquisition method.

The following summarizes the merger consideration paid to DTH stockholders (except for the Levy Newco Parties) (in thousands):

	Calculation of Purchase Price
Cash consideration paid ⁽¹⁾	\$ 105,164
Value of share consideration issued ⁽²⁾	69,305
Fair value of equity interests acquired in Step 1 ⁽³⁾	120,000
Less: Transaction expenses paid by the Company ⁽¹⁾	(10,164)
Total purchase price	\$ 284,305

- (1) Each issued and outstanding share of DTH stock held by DTH stockholders other than the Levy Newco Parties was converted into the right to receive the per share merger consideration, which equaled \$38.84 per DTH share, payable in cash and the Company’s common stock. Cash consideration was paid with respect to all common stock of DTH except for shares held by the Levy Newco Parties. The aggregate amount of cash consideration paid directly to DTH stockholders was \$95 million. Total cash consideration paid also included \$10.2 million of expenses paid by the Company for the closing of Step 2.
- (2) The stock merger consideration consisted of the Company’s common stock issued to DTH stockholders as part of the merger consideration in exchange for shares of DTH common stock. Company shares exchanged for the DTH shares held by the Levy Newco Parties are discussed in (3) below. The following summarizes the number of shares of the Company’s common stock issued to DTH stockholders other than the Levy Newco Parties:

(in thousands, except share and per share data)	Calculation of Share Consideration
Number of shares issued	4,553,540
Value per share as of June 30, 2015	\$ 15.22
Value of share consideration transferred	\$ 69,305

- (3) The Company exchanged its common stock for DTH shares held by the Levy Newco Parties acquired in Step 1. The Transactions were accounted for as related events transferring control of DTH to the Company through a minority investment in Step 1 and a controlling interest in Step 2. The Levy Newco Parties’ shares of DTH common stock were

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

exchanged for shares of the Company's common stock in the Business Combination, but represent a previously held equity interest in an acquired company. The previously held equity interest had the same value as its \$120 million purchase price.

The Company recorded an allocation of the purchase price to DTH's tangible and identifiable intangible assets acquired and liabilities assumed based on their fair value as of the Closing Date. The final purchase price allocation is as follows (in thousands):

	Purchase Price Allocation
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 5,173
Accounts receivable and other receivables	3,228
Inventories	2,541
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	4,266
Total current assets	15,208
Property and equipment	105,524
Intangible assets	250,490
Other assets	4,194
Total identifiable assets acquired	375,416
Accounts payable	(18,866)
Other accrued liabilities	(26,607)
Current portion of capital lease obligations and deemed landlord financing liabilities	(1,670)
Long-term debt, capital lease obligations and deemed landlord financing liabilities	(246,562)
Deferred income taxes	(80,254)
Other long-term liabilities	(36,208)
Net identifiable liabilities assumed	(34,751)
Goodwill	319,056
Total gross consideration	\$ 284,305

The final values allocated to intangible assets and the useful lives are as follows (in thousands):

	Fair Value	Useful life
Favorable lease assets and other intangible assets	\$ 14,290	0.6 to 19 years
Trademarks	220,300	Indefinite
Franchise agreements	15,900	0.1 to 40 years
Total intangible assets	\$ 250,490	
Unfavorable lease liabilities ⁽¹⁾	\$ (23,652)	1.5 to 19 years
Weighted average life of definite-lived intangibles		11 years

(1) Included in other non-current liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets.

During the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), the Company recorded a net \$0.8 million adjustment to goodwill due to a change in estimate for the liability for deferred income taxes. The goodwill of \$319.1 million arising from the Business Combination is primarily attributable to the market position and future growth potential of DTH for both company-operated and franchise-operated restaurants. Approximately \$0.6 million of goodwill is expected to be deductible for income tax purposes.

For the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), the Company recorded approximately \$0.7 million of transaction-related expenses, of which \$0.1 million related to the Business Combination. During the fifty-three weeks ended January 3,

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

2017 (Successor), the Company was able to recover legal defense costs related to a purported class action and derivative complaint (See Note 17 for further discussion) of \$0.5 million from its insurance company related to costs previously expensed. For the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), the Company incurred approximately \$12.3 million and \$7.3 million, respectively, of transaction expenses directly related to Step 1 and Step 2 of the Business Combination. Also included in transaction-related costs on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) was \$0.7 million of costs related to the secondary offering as described in Note 13.

LAC incurred \$4.5 million of transaction-related expenses not reported with DTH's Predecessor consolidated statements of comprehensive income that were directly related to the Business Combination for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor). Transaction-related expenses, which were \$2.9 million through the second fiscal quarter ended June 16, 2015 and \$0.5 million for the fiscal year 2014, were reported by LAC in prior 10-Q and 10-K filings which are also not reported with DTH's Predecessor consolidated statements of comprehensive income (loss). Cash outflows of \$4.3 million related to transaction-related expenses previously expensed by LAC are reported as a cash outflows for operating activities for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor). In addition, in connection with the Business Combination, the Company paid deferred underwriter compensation of \$5.3 million in connection with the Company's initial public offering in November 2013 as well as repaid working capital loans of \$0.5 million to the Company's sponsor, Levy Acquisition Sponsor LLC, both of which were accrued on LAC's balance sheet at June 16, 2015, and not included with DTH's Predecessor consolidated balance sheet. Both of these payments are included as cash outflows for financing activities for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor).

4. Restaurant Closure and Other Related Charges

At January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), the restaurant closure liability is \$2.8 million and \$3.1 million, respectively. The details of the restaurant closure activities are discussed below.

Restaurant Closures and Lease Reserves

During the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), the Company closed one restaurant with a remaining lease obligation and accrued a lease termination fee, which was paid subsequent to fiscal year end 2017. The following table presents other restaurant closure liability activity for each period related to current year and prior year restaurant closures and sublease income shortfalls (in thousands):

	Successor			Predecessor
	52 Weeks Ended January 2, 2018	53 Weeks Ended January 3, 2017	26 Weeks Ended December 29, 2015	26 Weeks Ended June 30, 2015
Closure liability at beginning of period	\$ 1,365	\$ 1,023	\$ 1,037	\$ 1,143
Adjustments to estimate based on current activity	22	439	129	54
Charges related to current period activity	46	—	—	—
Charges for accretion in current period	97	80	41	40
Cash payments	(317)	(177)	(184)	(200)
Closure liability at end of period	\$ 1,213	\$ 1,365	\$ 1,023	\$ 1,037

The current portion of the restaurant closure liability is \$0.5 million at January 2, 2018 (Successor) and \$0.3 million at January 3, 2017 (Successor) and is included in other accrued liabilities in the consolidated balance sheets. The non-current portion of the restaurant closure liability is \$0.7 million and \$1.1 million at January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), respectively, and is included in other non-current liabilities in the consolidated balance sheets.

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

Restaurant Closure and Other Related Charges for 12 Underperforming Restaurants

During the fourth fiscal quarter of 2015, the Company closed 12 company-operated restaurants as previously announced. No discontinued operations treatment was required for any of these closures. During the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor), the Company recorded restaurant closure and other related charges of \$4.5 million, offset by \$2.7 million related to the re-characterization and reclassification of lease related liabilities, for a net charge of \$1.8 million, which is included in restaurant closure charges, net on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income (loss). The charges include (1) the present value of the future lease obligations, net of estimated sublease income, (2) a lease termination payment, (3) brokerage commission, (4) post closure rent, utilities, property tax and common area maintenance charges, (5) unused food and paper that could not be redeployed, (6) Worker Adjustment and Retraining Notification ("WARN") act and stay bonus payments to terminated employees, and (7) other direct costs associated with the closures. During the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), the Company recorded accretion expense related to the closures, direct expense of \$0.1 million related to the closures and net adjustments to the estimate for one closed restaurant.

A summary of the restaurant closure liability activity for these 12 closed restaurants consisted of the following (in thousands):

	One-time employee termination benefits	Contract termination costs	Other associated costs	Total
Balance at June 30, 2015 (Predecessor)	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —
Charges for accretion and other in current period	168	\$ 1,289	\$ 388	\$ 1,845
Cash payments	(168)	\$ (324)	\$ (225)	\$ (717)
Reclassification of lease related liabilities	—	\$ 2,672	\$ —	\$ 2,672
Balance at December 29, 2015 (Successor)	—	3,637	163	3,800
Charges for accretion in current period	—	133	—	133
Cash payments	—	(1,444)	(163)	(1,607)
Adjustment to estimates based on current activity	—	(553)	—	(553)
Balance at January 3, 2017 (Successor)	—	1,773	—	1,773
Charges for accretion in current period	—	70	—	70
Cash payments	—	(376)	—	(376)
Adjustment to estimates based on current activity	—	144	—	144
Balance at January 2, 2018 (Successor)	\$ —	\$ 1,611	\$ —	\$ 1,611

The current portion of the restaurant closure liability is \$0.3 million and \$0.6 million at January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), respectively, and is included in other accrued liabilities in the consolidated balance sheets. The non-current portion of the restaurant closure liability is \$1.3 million and \$1.2 million at January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), respectively, and is included in other non-current liabilities in the consolidated balance sheets.

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

5. Property and Equipment, Net

Property and equipment, net at January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor) consisted of the following (in thousands):

	Successor	
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017
Land	\$ 9,800	\$ 13,919
Buildings	2,325	3,391
Restaurant and other equipment	74,075	58,699
Leasehold improvements	100,192	78,739
Buildings under capital leases	4,625	5,433
Restaurant property leased to others	3,090	—
Construction-in-progress	11,905	8,703
	206,012	168,884
Less: Accumulated depreciation	(49,888)	(30,564)
Property and Equipment, Net	\$ 156,124	\$ 138,320

6. Summary of Refranchising and Franchise Acquisitions**Refranchising**

In connection with the sale of company-operated restaurants to franchisees, the Company typically enters into several agreements, in addition to an asset purchase agreement, with franchisees including franchise and lease agreements. The Company typically sells the restaurants' inventory and equipment and retains ownership of the leasehold interest on the real estate of the lease and/or sublease to the franchisee. The Company has determined that its restaurant dispositions usually represent multiple-element arrangements, and as such, the cash consideration is allocated to the separate elements based on their relative selling price. Cash consideration generally includes up-front consideration for the sale of the restaurants and franchise fees and future cash consideration for royalties and lease payments. The Company considers the future lease payments in allocating the initial cash consideration received. The Company compares the stated rent under the lease and/or sublease agreements with comparable market rents and the Company records favorable or unfavorable lease assets/liabilities with a corresponding offset to the gain or loss on the sale of the company-operated restaurants. The cash consideration per restaurant for franchise fees is consistent with the amounts stated in the related franchise agreements which are charged for separate standalone arrangements. Therefore, the Company recognizes the franchise fees when earned. Future royalty income is also recognized in revenue as earned.

The Company sold five company-operated restaurants to franchisees during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor). There were no company-operated restaurants sold during the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) or the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor). The following table provides detail of the related gain recognized during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) (dollars in thousands):

	<u>Successor</u>
	<u>52 Weeks Ended January 2,</u>
	<u>2018</u>
Company-operated restaurants sold to franchisees	5
Proceeds from the sale of company-operated restaurants	\$ 2,192
Net assets sold (primarily furniture, fixtures and equipment)	(1,261)
Goodwill related to the company-operated restaurants sold to franchisees	(247)
Net unfavorable lease liabilities ^(a)	(548)
Other costs	(5)
Gain on sale of company-operated restaurants ^(b)	<u>\$ 131</u>

^(a) The Company recorded favorable lease assets of \$0.1 million and unfavorable lease liabilities of \$0.6 million as a result of subleasing land, buildings and leasehold improvements to franchisees, in connection with the sale of company-operated restaurants.

^(b) Included in loss on disposal of assets, net on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

Franchise Acquisitions

The Company acquired one franchise-operated restaurant during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) and six franchise-operated restaurants during the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor). The Company accounts for the acquisition of franchise-operated restaurants using the acquisition method of accounting for business combinations. The purchase price allocations were based on fair value estimates determined using significant unobservable inputs (Level 3). The goodwill recorded primarily relates to the market position and future growth potential of the markets acquired and is expected to be deductible for income tax purposes. There were no franchise acquisitions during the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) or the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor). The following table provides detail of the combined acquisitions for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) and the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (dollars in thousands):

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

	Successor	
	52 Weeks Ended January 2, 2018	53 Weeks Ended January 3, 2017
Franchise-operated restaurants acquired from franchisees	1	6
Goodwill	\$ 860	\$ 969
Property and equipment	360	821
Land and building	—	2,127
Unfavorable lease liability	(85)	—
Liabilities assumed	(7)	(26)
Total Consideration	\$ 1,128	\$ 3,891

Total consideration for the franchise-operated restaurants excluding the land and building acquired from a franchisee was \$1.8 million during the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor).

7. Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets

Changes in the carrying amount of goodwill for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) are as follows (in thousands):

	Goodwill
Balance as of January 3, 2017 (Successor)	\$ 320,025
Sale of company-operated restaurants	(247)
Acquisition of franchise-operated restaurants	860
Balance as of January 2, 2018 (Successor)	\$ 320,638

The increase in goodwill was due to an adjustment of \$0.9 million related to the acquisition of one franchise-operated restaurant offset by \$(0.2) million related to the sale of five company-operated restaurants to franchisees during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), as described in more detail in Note 6.

The carrying value of trademarks was \$220.3 million at both January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor).

The Company's other intangible assets at January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor) consisted of the following (in thousands):

	Successor					
	January 2, 2018			January 3, 2017		
	Gross Carrying Amount	Accumulated Amortization	Net	Gross Carrying Amount	Accumulated Amortization	Net
Favorable lease assets	\$ 13,744	\$ (4,442)	\$ 9,302	\$ 14,176	\$ (2,996)	\$ 11,180
Franchise rights	15,284	(3,282)	12,002	15,489	(2,038)	13,451
Reacquired franchise rights	243	(49)	194	161	(10)	151
Total amortized other intangible assets	\$ 29,271	\$ (7,773)	\$ 21,498	\$ 29,826	\$ (5,044)	\$ 24,782

During the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), \$0.1 million of franchise rights associated with five franchise locations were fully amortized and the Company reclassified \$0.1 million of franchise rights as reacquired franchise rights from the acquisition of one franchise location. During the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), the Company wrote-

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

off \$0.2 million of franchise rights associated with the closure of four franchise locations and reclassified \$0.2 million of franchise rights as reacquired franchise rights from the acquisition of six franchise locations.

Favorable lease assets are related to below-market leasing arrangements. Favorable lease assets are amortized on a lease-by-lease basis using the straight-line method over the remaining lease terms of the underlying leases. Franchise rights are amortized using the straight-line method over the remaining life of the franchise agreements or 40 years, whichever is less. The weighted-average amortization periods as of January 2, 2018 (Successor) for favorable lease assets and franchise rights equaled 7.3 years and 13.0 years, respectively.

Amortization expense for amortizable intangible assets totaled \$3.3 million, \$3.6 million, \$1.7 million and \$1.0 million for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), respectively, and includes amortization of favorable lease assets of \$1.9 million, \$2.0 million, \$1.0 million and \$0.3 million for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), respectively, and amortization of franchise rights of \$1.3 million, \$1.6 million, \$0.7 million and \$0.7 million for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), respectively. The estimated future amortization for favorable lease assets and franchise rights for the next five fiscal years is as follows (in thousands):

	Favorable Lease Assets	Franchise Rights
2018	\$ 1,722	\$ 1,293
2019	1,447	1,255
2020	1,171	1,186
2021	1,005	1,074
2022	922	973

8. Debt, Obligations Under Capital Leases and Deemed Landlord Financing Liabilities

The Company's debt, obligations under capital leases and deemed landlord financing liabilities at January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor) consisted of the following (in thousands):

	Successor	
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017
2015 Senior Credit Facility, net of debt discount of \$747 and \$1,035 and deferred financing costs of \$252 and \$349 at January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), respectively	\$ 152,001	\$ 157,616
Total outstanding indebtedness	152,001	157,616
Obligations under capital leases and deemed landlord financing liabilities	20,053	17,715
Total debt, net	172,054	175,331
Less: amounts due within one year	1,415	1,588
Total amounts due after one year, net	\$ 170,639	\$ 173,743

At January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), the Company assessed the amounts recorded under the 2015 Senior Credit Facility and determined that such amounts approximated fair value.

2015 Revolving Credit Facility (Successor)

On August 4, 2015, the Company refinanced its existing senior credit facility (“2013 Senior Credit Facility”) and entered into a new credit agreement (the “Credit Agreement”). The Credit Agreement, which matures on August 4, 2020, provides for a \$250 million revolving credit facility (the “2015 Senior Credit Facility”). The Company utilized \$164 million of proceeds from the Credit Agreement to refinance in total its 2013 Senior Credit Facility and pay costs associated with the refinancing. The 2013 Senior Credit Facility, as amended March 20, 2015, totaled \$267.1 million, consisting of an initial \$227.1 million term loan (“2013 Term Loan”) and a \$40 million revolver (“2013 Revolver”). At the time of the refinance, a \$162.5 million term loan balance was outstanding and \$17.6 million of revolver capacity was utilized to support outstanding letters of credit under the 2013 Senior Credit Facility.

At the Company’s option, loans under the 2015 Senior Credit Facility may bear interest at a base rate or LIBOR, plus an applicable margin determined in accordance with a consolidated total lease adjusted leverage ratio-based pricing grid. The base rate is calculated as the highest of (a) the Federal Funds Rate plus 1/2 of 1%, (b) the prime rate of Bank of America, and (c) LIBOR plus 1.00%. For LIBOR loans, the applicable margin is in the range of 1.50% to 2.50%, and for base rate loans the applicable margin is in the range of 0.50% and 1.50%. The applicable margin was initially set at 2.00% for LIBOR loans and at 1.00% for base rate loans until delivery of financial statements and a compliance certificate for the fourth fiscal quarter ending after the closing date of the Credit Agreement. Following delivery of financial statements and a compliance certificate for the fourth fiscal quarter ending December 29, 2015 (Successor), the applicable margin decreased 0.25% for both LIBOR and base rate loans during the first fiscal quarter of 2016. The 2015 Senior Credit Facility capacity used to support letters of credit currently incurs fees equal to the applicable margin of 1.75%. The 2015 Senior Credit Facility unused commitment currently incurs a 0.20% fee.

The Credit Agreement contains certain financial covenants, including the maintenance of a consolidated total lease adjusted leverage ratio and a consolidated fixed charge coverage ratio. The Company was in compliance with the financial covenants as of January 2, 2018 (Successor). Substantially all of the assets of the Company are pledged as collateral under the 2015 Senior Credit Facility.

The Company capitalized lender debt discount costs and deferred financing costs of \$1.4 million and \$0.5 million, respectively, in connection with the refinancing and expensed \$0.1 million as debt modification costs in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income for the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor). Lender debt discount costs and deferred financing costs associated with the 2015 Senior Credit Facility are presented net of the 2015 Senior Credit Facility balance on the consolidated balance sheets and will be amortized to interest expense over the term of the 2015 Senior Credit Facility. Amortization of deferred financing costs and debt discount related to the 2015 Senior Credit Facility totaled \$0.4 million for both the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) and the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and \$0.2 million during the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor).

At January 2, 2018 (Successor), the weighted average interest rate on the outstanding balance of the 2015 Senior Credit Facility was 3.32%. At January 2, 2018 (Successor), the Company had a total of \$78.8 million of availability for additional borrowings under the 2015 Senior Credit Facility as the Company had \$153.0 million of outstanding borrowings and \$18.2 million of letters of credit outstanding which reduce availability under the 2015 Senior Credit Facility.

DTH 2013 Senior Credit Facility

On April 21, 2014, DTH amended its 2013 Senior Credit Facility whereby the term loan was increased by \$62.0 million to \$220.0 million and the 2013 Revolver remained at \$40.0 million, the proceeds of which were used for a \$62.0 million partial redemption of SAG Restaurants subordinated notes (the “April 2014 Debt Refinance”).

In March 2015, DTH amended its 2013 Senior Credit Facility to increase the 2013 Term Loan by \$25.1 million to \$227.1 million (the “March 2015 Debt Refinance”). A portion of the proceeds from Step 1 of the Business Combination, described in Note 3, proceeds of \$10 million from the 2013 Revolver and the March 2015 Debt Refinance proceeds were used to fully redeem the then outstanding balance of subordinated notes of \$111.2 million.

On March 12, 2015, DTH satisfied the rating condition in its 2013 Senior Credit Facility resulting in a decrease in interest rate to LIBOR (not to be less than 1.00%) plus a margin of 4.25%.

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

The Company incurred lender costs and third-party costs associated with the March 2015 Debt Refinance of \$1.6 million of which \$1.5 million was capitalized as lender debt discount and \$0.1 million was expensed as debt modification costs in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor).

Lender debt discount costs and deferred financing costs associated with the 2013 Senior Credit Facility were amortized to interest expense over the term of the 2013 Term Loan using the effective interest method. Amortization of deferred financing costs including debt discount totaled \$0.9 million during the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor).

Subordinated Notes (Predecessor)

In connection with Step 1 of the Business Combination and the March 2015 Debt Refinance discussed above, DTH fully redeemed the outstanding balance of the SAG Restaurants LLC (SAG Restaurants) subordinated notes ("SAG Restaurants Sub Notes") and F&C Restaurant Holding Co. (F&C RHC) subordinated notes ("F&C RHC Sub Notes") on March 20, 2015 of \$111.2 million.

For the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), interest expense related to the SAG Restaurants Sub Notes and F&C RHC Sub Notes was \$3.1 million.

Other Debt Information

Based on debt agreements and leases in place as of January 2, 2018 (Successor), future maturities of debt, obligations under capital leases and deemed landlord financing liabilities were as follows (in thousands):

2018	\$	1,415
2019		988
2020		153,847
2021		804
2022		791
Thereafter		15,208
Total maturities		173,053
Less: debt discount and deferred financing costs		(999)
Total debt, net	\$	172,054

9. Derivative Instruments

In June 2016, the Company entered into an interest rate cap agreement that became effective July 1, 2016, to hedge cash flows associated with interest rate fluctuations on variable rate debt, with a termination date of March 31, 2020 ("2016 Interest Rate Cap Agreement"). The 2016 Interest Rate Cap Agreement has a notional amount of \$70.0 million of the 2015 Senior Credit Facility that effectively converted that portion of the outstanding balance of the 2015 Senior Credit Facility from variable rate debt to capped variable rate debt, resulting in a change in the applicable interest rate from an interest rate of one-month LIBOR plus the applicable margin (as provided by the 2015 Senior Credit Facility) to a capped interest rate of 2.00% plus the applicable margin. During the period from July 1, 2016 through January 2, 2018 (Successor), the 2016 Interest Rate Cap Agreement had no hedge ineffectiveness.

As of December 29, 2015 (Successor) and through June 30, 2016, the Company had an interest rate cap agreement to hedge cash flows associated with interest rate fluctuations on variable rate debt ("2013 Interest Rate Cap Agreement"). The 2013 Interest Rate Cap Agreement had a notional amount of \$87.5 million as of December 29, 2015 (Successor). The individual caplet contracts within the interest rate cap agreement expired at various dates through June 30, 2016.

2016 Interest Rate Cap Agreement (Successor)

To ensure the effectiveness of the 2016 Interest Rate Cap Agreement, the Company elected the one-month LIBOR rate option for its variable rate interest payments on term balances equal to or in excess of the applicable notional amount of the interest rate cap agreement as of each reset date. The reset dates and other critical terms on the term loans perfectly match with the interest rate cap reset dates and other critical terms during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor).

During the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), the Company reclassified \$4,000 of interest expense related to hedges of these transactions into earnings. As of January 2, 2018 (Successor), the Company was hedging forecasted transactions expected to occur through March 31, 2020. Assuming interest rates at January 2, 2018 (Successor) remain constant, \$0.3 million of interest expense related to hedges of these transactions is expected to be reclassified into earnings over the next 27 months. The Company intends to ensure that this hedge remains effective, therefore, approximately \$60,000 is expected to be reclassified into interest expense over the next 12 months.

The effective portion of the 2016 Interest Rate Cap Agreement through January 2, 2018 (Successor) was included in accumulated other comprehensive income.

2013 Interest Rate Cap Agreement (Predecessor)

To ensure the effectiveness of the 2013 Interest Rate Cap Agreement through June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), the Company elected the three-month LIBOR rate option for its variable rate interest payments on term balances equal to or in excess of the applicable notional amount of the interest rate cap agreement as of each reset date. The reset dates and other critical terms on the term loans perfectly match with the interest rate cap reset dates and other critical terms during the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor).

As of the July 1, 2015 interest reset date, the Company elected the one-month LIBOR rate option for its variable rate interest payments on term balances equal to or in excess of the applicable notional amount of the 2013 Interest Rate Cap Agreement,

and as a result, this hedge became ineffective. Therefore, after July 1, 2015 through June 30, 2016, any changes in fair value were recorded through interest expense.

The effective portion of the 2013 Interest Rate Cap Agreement through June 30, 2015 (Predecessor) was included in accumulated other comprehensive income and included as a fair value adjustment through the purchase price allocation as described in Note 3.

Warrant Liability (Predecessor)

On March 20, 2015, warrants to purchase 597,802 shares of DTH common stock held by a former large shareholder of DTH were exercised at a strike price of \$25.00 per share based on a fair value of \$8.3 million determined based on the common stock price of the Initial Investment discussed above in Note 3. Upon exercise, 384,777 shares of DTH common stock were redeemed as payment for the strike price resulting in 213,025 shares of DTH common stock being issued. DTH recorded a mark-to-market adjustment of \$35,000 to reduce the liability during the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor) and then reclassified the balance of the warrant liability of \$8.3 million to shareholders' equity.

10. Fair Value Measurements

The fair values of cash and cash equivalents, accounts receivable, accounts payable and other accrued liabilities approximate their carrying amounts due to their short maturities. The carrying value of the 2015 Senior Credit Facility approximated fair value. The 2016 Interest Rate Cap Agreement is recorded at fair value in the Company's consolidated balance sheets.

As of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), the Company held certain assets and liabilities that are required to be measured at fair value on a recurring basis. For both periods, these included derivative instruments related to interest rates. The Company determined the fair values of the interest rate cap contracts based on counterparty quotes, with appropriate adjustments for any significant impact of nonperformance risk of the parties to the interest rate cap contracts. Therefore, the Company has categorized these interest rate cap contracts as Level 2 fair value measurements. The fair value of the 2016 Interest Rate Cap Agreement was \$0.3 million at January 2, 2018 (Successor) and \$0.6 million at January 3, 2017 (Successor) and is included in other assets in the Company's consolidated balance sheets.

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

The following is a summary of the estimated fair values for the long-term debt instruments (in thousands):

	Successor			
	January 2, 2018		January 3, 2017	
	Estimated Fair Value	Book Value	Estimated Fair Value	Book Value
2015 Senior Credit Facility	\$ 152,001	\$ 152,001	\$ 157,616	\$ 157,616

The Company's assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis as of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor) were as follows (in thousands):

	January 2, 2018	Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)		
		Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)	
2016 Interest Rate Cap Agreement	\$ 332	\$ —	\$ 332	\$ —
Total assets measured at fair value	\$ 332	\$ —	\$ 332	\$ —

	January 3, 2017	Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)		
		Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)	
2016 Interest Rate Cap Agreement	\$ 598	\$ —	\$ 598	\$ —
Total assets measured at fair value	\$ 598	\$ —	\$ 598	\$ —

11. Other Accrued Liabilities and Other Non-Current Liabilities

A summary of other accrued liabilities follows (in thousands):

	Successor	
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017
Employee compensation and related items	\$ 12,945	\$ 13,783
Accrued insurance	7,232	8,192
Accrued sales tax	3,987	3,916
Accrued real property tax	1,331	1,274
Restaurant closure liability	794	875
Accrued advertising	728	1,657
Other	8,240	6,956
	\$ 35,257	\$ 36,653

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

A summary of other non-current liabilities follows (in thousands):

	Successor	
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017
Unfavorable lease liabilities	\$ 14,469	\$ 17,072
Insurance reserves	5,965	4,269
Deferred rent liability	2,972	1,676
Restaurant closure liabilities	2,030	2,263
Deferred development and initial franchise fees	1,335	1,385
Deferred gift card income	1,234	1,182
Unearned trade discount, non-current	1,149	1,596
Other	2,277	697
	<u>\$ 31,431</u>	<u>\$ 30,140</u>

12. Stock-Based Compensation

The Company recognizes compensation expense based on estimated grant date fair values for all stock-based awards issued to employees and directors. The Company estimates the fair value of stock-based awards based on assumptions as of the grant date. The Company recognizes these compensation costs for only those awards expected to vest, on a straight-line basis over the requisite service period of the award. The Company estimates the number of awards expected to vest based, in part, on historical forfeiture rates and also based on management's expectations of employee turnover within the specific employee groups receiving the awards. Forfeitures are estimated at the time of grant and revised, if necessary, in subsequent periods, if actual forfeitures differ from those estimates.

2015 Omnibus Incentive Plan

In connection with the approval of the Business Combination, the Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. 2015 Omnibus Incentive Plan (the "2015 Plan") was approved by shareholders to offer eligible employees, directors and consultants cash and stock-based incentive awards. Awards under the 2015 Plan are generally not restricted to any specific form or structure and could include, without limitation, stock options, stock appreciation rights, restricted stock, other stock-based awards, other cash-based compensation and performance awards. Under the 2015 Plan, there are 3,300,000 shares of common stock reserved and authorized. At January 2, 2018, there were 1,361,986 shares of common stock available for grant under the 2015 Plan.

Stock-Based Compensation Expense (Successor)

The total compensation expense related to the 2015 Plan was \$4.9 million for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), \$4.1 million for the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and \$1.5 million during the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor).

Restricted Stock Awards (Successor)

During the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), 534,690 shares of restricted stock were granted to certain directors, officers and employees of the Company under the 2015 Plan. These restricted stock awards vest on a straight-line basis in equal annual installments over four years from the grant date.

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

A summary of outstanding and unvested restricted stock activity as of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and changes during the period from January 3, 2017 (Successor) through January 2, 2018 (Successor) are as follows:

	Shares	Weighted-Average Grant Date Fair Value
Nonvested at January 3, 2017 (Successor)	1,133,822	\$ 10.40
Granted	534,690	13.64
Vested	(397,727)	10.60
Forfeited	(181,875)	10.34
Nonvested at January 2, 2018 (Successor)	1,088,910	\$ 11.92

During the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), the Company made payments of \$1.9 million related to tax withholding obligations for the vesting of restricted stock awards in exchange for 140,209 shares withheld. As of January 2, 2018 (Successor), there was \$8.5 million of unrecognized compensation expense, net of estimated forfeitures, related to restricted stock, which is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of 2.5 years. The weighted average grant date fair value of restricted stock awards granted was \$13.64, \$9.30 and \$11.16 during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor), respectively. The total fair value of awards that became fully vested during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) was \$5.4 million, \$2.4 million and zero, respectively.

Stock Options

During the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), 132,000 stock options were granted to certain employees of the Company under the 2015 Plan. The stock options vest on a straight-line basis in equal annual installments over four years from the grant date.

A summary of stock option activity as of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and changes during the period from January 3, 2017 (Successor) through January 2, 2018 (Successor) are as follows:

	Shares	Weighted Average Exercise Price	Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Term (in Years)	Aggregate Intrinsic Value (in thousands)
Options outstanding at January 3, 2017 (Successor)	334,500	\$ 9.94	6.1	\$ 1,464
Granted	132,000	13.74		
Exercised	(9,750)	10.13		
Forfeited / Expired	(39,750)	10.98		
Options outstanding at January 2, 2018 (Successor)	417,000	\$ 11.04	5.5	\$ 641
Options exercisable at January 2, 2018 (Successor)	121,498	\$ 10.12	4.8	\$ 242
Options exercisable and expected to vest at January 2, 2018 (Successor)	393,747	\$ 11.00	5.4	\$ 614

The aggregated intrinsic value in the table above is the amount by which the current market price of the Company's stock exceeds the exercise price on January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), respectively.

The following table reflects the weighted-average assumptions used in the Black-Scholes option-pricing model to value the stock options granted in the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor):

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

	Successor		
	52 Weeks Ended January 2, 2018	53 Weeks Ended January 3, 2017	26 Weeks Ended December 29, 2015
Expected volatility	36.09%	37.64%	38.01%
Risk-free rate of return	1.86%	1.12%	1.84%
Expected life (in years)	4.75	5.50	5.50
Dividend yield	—	—	—
Fair value per share at date of grant	\$ 4.63	\$ 3.31	\$ 3.93

Since the Company does not have a substantial history of traded common stock activity, expected volatility was based on historical data from selected peer public company restaurants. The risk-free rate is based on published U.S. Treasury rates in effect at the time of grant with a similar duration of the expected life of the options. The expected life of options granted is derived from the average of the contractual term of the option and the vesting periods. The Company has not paid any dividends to date, therefore, the Company used an expected dividend yield of zero for option valuation purposes.

As of January 2, 2018 (Successor), there was \$0.9 million of total unrecognized compensation expense, net of estimated forfeitures, related to stock options grants which is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average remaining period of 2.6 years. The total intrinsic value of stock options exercised was \$25,000, \$2,000 and zero during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor), respectively.

Stock-Based Compensation Expense (Predecessor)

In connection with Step 1 of the Business Combination consummated on March 20, 2015, all unvested restricted stock units (“RSUs”) under the Predecessor plan became fully vested and all vested RSUs were then immediately settled for shares of DTH common stock, net of shares withheld for minimum statutory employee tax withholding obligations and all unvested stock options under the Predecessor plan became fully vested and all vested stock options were also exercised and shares were issued, net of shares withheld for the applicable option strike price and employee tax withholding obligations. An aggregate of 237,948 shares of DTH common stock were issued and 247,552 shares of DTH common stock were redeemed for applicable option strike price and employee tax withholding obligations. In exchange for the shares withheld, DTH made payments of \$7.5 million related to employee tax withholding obligations.

No RSUs or stock options remained outstanding under the Predecessor plan after March 20, 2015 or as of January 2, 2018. DTH recorded stock-based compensation expense of \$0.5 million, which included all remaining unrecognized compensation expense related to the accelerated vesting on RSUs and stock options on March 20, 2015, for the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor).

A summary of RSUs activity as of June 30, 2015 (Predecessor) and changes during the period from December 30, 2014 to June 30, 2015 (Predecessor) are as follows:

	Shares	Weighted-Average Grant Date Fair Value
Nonvested at December 30, 2014 (Predecessor)	94,100	25.00
Granted	—	—
Vested	(94,100)	25.00
Forfeited	—	—
Nonvested at June 30, 2015 (Predecessor)	—	\$ —

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

A summary of stock option activity as of June 30, 2015 (Predecessor) and changes during the period from December 30, 2014 to June 30, 2015 (Predecessor) are as follows:

	Shares	Weighted Average Exercise Price	Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Term (in Years)	Aggregate Intrinsic Value (in thousands)
Options outstanding at December 30, 2014 (Predecessor)	90,000	23.10	8.7	1,400
Granted	—	—		
Exercised	(90,000)	23.10		
Forfeited	—	—		
Options outstanding at June 30, 2015 (Predecessor)	—	\$ —	—	\$ —
Options exercisable at June 30, 2015 (Predecessor)	—	\$ —	—	\$ —
Options exercisable and expected to vest at June 30, 2015 (Predecessor)	—	\$ —	—	\$ —

13. Shareholders' Equity

The authorized common stock of the Company consists of 400,000,000 shares. Holders of the Company's common stock are entitled to one vote for each share of common stock. As of January 2, 2018 (Successor), there were 38,434,274 shares of common stock issued and outstanding and warrants to purchase 5,999,934 shares of the Company's common stock outstanding at a strike price of \$11.50. Originally, 12,250,000 warrants were issued in the Company's initial public offering and in a private sale not involving a public offering ("Private Placement Warrants"), both in November 2013. An additional 389,623 Private Placement Warrants were issued in June 2015 to Levy Acquisition Sponsor LLC (the "Sponsor"), the Company's sponsor, to satisfy outstanding working capital loans owed to the Sponsor by the Company. All the warrants became exercisable on July 30, 2015, 30 days after the completion of the Business Combination.

The Company previously had 15,000,000 common shares that were sold as part of the Company's initial public offering in November 2013 which each contained a redemption feature that allows for the redemption of the common shares. The amount of the common shares subject to possible redemption was recorded as a liability on LAC's consolidated balance sheet and as of June 16, 2015, 13,622,394 shares were classified outside of permanent equity at its redemption value of \$136.2 million. On June 30, 2015, in connection with the Business Combination, 1,115 shares were redeemed at \$10 per share and the remaining shares with a value of \$136.2 million were reclassified into equity.

The Company is authorized to issue 1,000,000 preferred shares with designations, voting and other rights and preferences as may be determined from time to time by the Board of Directors. As of January 2, 2018 (Successor), there were no preferred shares issued or outstanding.

As described in Note 3, on March 20, 2015, the Levy Newco Parties made a \$120 million minority equity investment in DTH in connection with a stock purchase agreement dated March 12, 2015. Proceeds of \$91.2 million from Step 1 of the Business Combination were used to purchase 2,348,968 shares of DTH common stock.

Also on March 20, 2015, warrants to purchase 597,802 shares of DTH common stock held by a former large shareholder of DTH were exercised at a strike price of \$25.00 per share based on a fair value of \$8.3 million determined from Step 1 of the Business Combination. The former large shareholder redeemed 384,777 DTH shares upon exercise as payment for the strike price resulting in 213,025 shares of DTH common stock issued. The Company recorded a mark-to-market adjustment of \$35,000 to reduce the warrant liability during the twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor) and then reclassified the balance of the warrant liability of \$8.3 million to shareholders' equity on March 20, 2015.

In October 2015, the Company launched a secondary offering of 3,372,016 shares of its common stock held by entities affiliated with Goldman Sachs Mezzanine Partners, Leonard Green & Partners and Charlesbank Capital Partners (the "Selling

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

Stockholders"). The underwriters exercised an option to purchase an additional 505,802 shares of common stock held by the Selling Stockholders. The Company did not sell any shares in this offering and did not receive any proceeds from the sale of the shares of common stock offered by the Selling Stockholders. In connection with the offering, the Company incurred costs of \$0.7 million, included in transaction-related costs on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income, during the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor).

On February 26, 2016, the Company's Board of Directors authorized a share repurchase program covering up to \$25.0 million in the aggregate of the Company's common stock and warrants which was effective immediately and expires upon completion of the repurchase program, unless terminated earlier by the Board of Directors. On August 23, 2016, the Company announced that the Board of Directors increased the repurchase program by \$25.0 million, to \$50.0 million. Purchases under the program may be made in open market or privately negotiated transactions. During the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), the Company repurchased (1) 986,497 shares of common stock for an average price per share of \$12.41 for an aggregate cost of approximately \$12.3 million, including incremental direct costs to acquire the shares, and (2) 424,439 warrants for an average price per warrant of \$3.72 for an aggregate cost of approximately \$1.6 million, including incremental direct costs to acquire the warrants. The Company expects to retire the repurchased shares and warrants and therefore has accounted for them as constructively retired as of January 2, 2018 (Successor). As of January 2, 2018 (Successor), there was approximately \$20.9 million remaining under the share repurchase program. The Company has no obligations to repurchase shares or warrants under this authorization, and the timing and value of shares and warrants purchased will depend on the Company's stock price, warrant price, market conditions and other factors.

Of the 424,439 warrants purchased during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), 400,000 warrants were purchased from PW Acquisitions, LP, a related party, at \$3.75 per warrant, representing a 5% discount from the closing price of \$3.95 per warrant on the transaction date. A member of the Company's Board of Directors is the chief executive officer and managing member of the general partner of PW Acquisitions, LP.

On July 11, 2016, the Company commenced an offer to exchange 0.2780 shares of the Company's common stock for each outstanding Company warrant exercisable for shares at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share (approximately one share for every 3.6 warrants tendered), up to a maximum of 6,750,000 warrants, which amount was subsequently increased to 7,750,000 warrants. The offer to exchange expired on August 8, 2016. A total of 5,516,243 warrants were tendered in the exchange offer. All of the Company's directors and executive officers who control or beneficially owned warrants participated in the offer and in aggregate tendered 1,501,800 of their warrants. The Company accepted for exchange all such warrants and issued an aggregate of 1,533,542 shares of the Company's common stock in exchange for the warrants tendered, representing approximately 4% of the shares outstanding after such issuance. The warrants will expire on June 30, 2020, unless sooner exercised or redeemed by the Company in accordance with the terms of the warrants. For the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), the Company incurred approximately \$0.6 million of transaction expenses related to the offer to exchange.

14. Earnings per Share

Basic income per share is calculated by dividing net income attributable to Del Taco's common shareholders for the Successor period and DTH's common shareholders for the Predecessor period by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding for the period. In computing dilutive income per share, basic income per share is adjusted for the assumed issuance of all applicable potentially dilutive share-based awards, including warrants, restricted stock, common stock options and restricted stock units.

Below are basic and diluted net income per share for the periods indicated (amounts in thousands except share and per share data):

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

	Successor			Predecessor
	52 Weeks Ended	53 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017	December 29, 2015	June 30, 2015
Numerator:				
Net income	\$ 49,871	\$ 20,913	\$ 2,653	\$ 2,104
Denominator:				
Weighted-average shares outstanding - basic	38,689,508	38,725,541	38,802,425	5,492,417
Dilutive effect of restricted shares and RSUs	417,371	263,003	744	13,972
Dilutive effect of stock options	28,931	—	—	93,634
Dilutive effect of warrants	814,097	286,105	1,446,824	10,836
Weighted-average shares outstanding - diluted	39,949,907	39,274,649	40,249,993	5,610,859
Net income per share - basic	\$ 1.29	\$ 0.54	\$ 0.07	\$ 0.38
Net income per share - diluted	\$ 1.25	\$ 0.53	\$ 0.07	\$ 0.37
Antidilutive options, unvested restricted stock awards, unvested RSUs and warrants excluded from the computations	69,722	8,343,842	5,365	—

Antidilutive stock options and unvested stock were excluded from the computation of diluted net income per share due to the assumed proceeds from the award's exercise or vesting being greater than the average market price of the common shares.

15. Income Taxes

The component of the provision for income taxes are as follows (in thousands):

	Successor			Predecessor
	52 Weeks Ended	53 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017	December 29, 2015	June 30, 2015
Current:				
Federal	\$ 5,884	\$ 4,204	\$ —	\$ 110
State	886	270	24	79
	6,770	4,474	24	189
Deferred:				
Federal	(24,636)	7,145	(90)	15
State	2,042	3,710	178	536
	(22,594)	10,855	88	551
Income tax (benefit) provision	\$ (15,824)	\$ 15,329	\$ 112	\$ 740

On December 22, 2017, the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act, (the "Act") was enacted, reducing the U.S. federal corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21% , among other changes, for tax years beginning after December 31, 2017.

The SEC staff issued Staff Accounting Bulletin 118, ("SAB 118") which provides guidance on accounting for the tax effects of the Act for which the accounting under ASC 740, Income Taxes ("ASC 740") is incomplete. To the extent that a company's accounting for certain income tax effects of the Act is incomplete but it is able to determine a reasonable estimate, it must record a provisional estimate in the financial statements. If a company cannot determine a provisional estimate to be included in the financial statements, it should continue to apply ASC 740 on the basis of the provisions of the tax laws that were in effect immediately before enactment of the Act.

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

The Company re-measured the applicable deferred tax assets and liabilities based on the rates at which they are expected to reverse. However, the Company is still analyzing certain aspects of the Act and refining its calculations, which could potentially affect the measurement of these balances or potentially give rise to new deferred tax amounts. The provisional amount recorded related to the remeasurement of our deferred tax balance was a tax benefit of approximately \$29.1 million based on currently available information and interpretations, which are continuing to evolve. The Company will continue to analyze additional information and guidance related to the Act as supplemental legislation, regulatory guidance, or evolving technical interpretations become available. The final impacts may differ from the recorded amounts as of January 2, 2018 (Successor), and the Company will continue to refine such amounts within the measurement period provided by SAB 118. The Company expects to complete its analysis no later than the fourth quarter of 2018.

The effective tax rates for the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor) were (46.5)%, 42.3%, 4.1% and 26.0%, respectively. The difference between the effective rates and the statutory federal income tax rate is composed of the following items (dollars in thousands):

	Successor						Predecessor	
	52 Weeks Ended January 2, 2018		53 Weeks Ended January 3, 2017		26 Weeks Ended December 29, 2015		26 Weeks Ended June 30, 2015	
Federal income taxes	\$ 11,916	35.0 %	\$ 12,685	35.0 %	\$ 968	35.0 %	\$ 995	35.0 %
State and local income taxes, net of federal tax benefit	1,688	5.0 %	1,882	5.2 %	280	10.1 %	435	15.3 %
Targeted job credits	(420)	(1.2)%	(448)	(1.2)%	(512)	(18.5)%	(34)	(1.2)%
Warrant liability	—	—%	—	—%	—	—%	(12)	(0.4)%
Investment in subsidiary	—	—%	570	1.6 %	83	3.0 %	383	13.5 %
Change in valuation allowance	—	—%	—	—%	(1,927)	(69.7)%	(2,805)	(98.6)%
Tax reform	(29,111)	(85.5)%	—	—%	—	—%	—	—%
Transaction costs	—	—%	227	0.6 %	1,194	43.2 %	2,255	79.3 %
Permanent tax differences and other	103	0.2 %	413	1.1 %	26	1.0 %	(477)	(16.9)%
Income tax (benefit) provision	\$ (15,824)	(46.5)%	\$ 15,329	42.3 %	\$ 112	4.1 %	\$ 740	26.0 %

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

Significant components of the Company's deferred tax assets and liabilities are as follows (in thousands):

	Successor	
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017
Deferred tax assets:		
Deferred rent	\$ 741	\$ 630
Accrued insurance	3,332	4,699
Reserve for restructuring and closed restaurants	763	1,252
Net operating loss carryforwards and tax credits	485	988
Deferred income	1,069	1,801
Stock-based compensation	767	919
Accrued compensation	472	2,897
Other, net	355	650
Deferred tax assets	7,984	13,836
Less valuation allowance	—	—
Net deferred tax assets	7,984	13,836
Deferred tax liabilities:		
Property, equipment and intangibles	(67,696)	(96,929)
Investment in subsidiary	(7,420)	(6,045)
Prepaid expenses	(1,442)	(2,135)
Deferred tax liabilities	(76,558)	(105,109)
Net deferred tax liabilities	\$ (68,574)	\$ (91,273)

The Company maintains deferred tax liabilities related to trademarks and other indefinite lived assets that are not netted against the deferred tax assets as reversal of the taxable temporary difference cannot serve as a source for realization of the deferred tax assets, because the deferred tax liability will not reverse until some indefinite future period when the assets are either sold or written down due to an impairment.

As part of purchase accounting, the Company was required to record all of DTH's acquired assets and liabilities at their acquisition date fair value, including deferred income taxes. The Company considered the weight of both positive and negative evidence and concluded that it is more likely than not that DTH's deferred tax assets will be realized and that no valuation allowance on DTH's deferred tax asset was required as of the date of acquisition.

As a result, the Company established deferred tax assets as well as deferred tax liabilities related to indefinite-lived intangibles through the purchase price allocation (see Note 3). In addition, after considering the Business Combination, the projected post-combination results and all available evidence, the Company released \$1.9 million of valuation allowance that was previously provided against the Company's deferred tax assets. In accordance with ASC 805-740-30-3, the Company recorded this release through income tax benefit during the twenty-six week period ended December 29, 2015 (Successor).

The Company did not have any federal or state net operating loss carryforwards as of January 2, 2018 (Successor). The Company had no federal tax credit carryforwards as of January 2, 2018 (Successor). State tax credit carryforwards as of January 2, 2018 (Successor) totaled \$0.6 million and begin to expire in 2024 .

As of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), the Company considered the weight of both positive and negative evidence and concluded that it is more likely than not that the Company's deferred tax assets will be realized and no valuation allowance is required.

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

As of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), the liability for unrecognized tax positions was \$0.2 million , and is included in other non-current liabilities in the consolidated balance sheets. The Company recognizes interest and penalties related to uncertain tax positions in income tax expense. As of January 2, 2018 (Successor), the Company did not have any accrued interest and penalties related to uncertain tax positions. The Company does not expect any significant increases or decreases within the next twelve months to its unrecognized tax positions. The total amount of net unrecognized tax positions that would impact the Company's effective tax rate, if ever recognized, is \$0.2 million .

The following table summarizes the changes to unrecognized tax positions (in thousands):

	Successor			Predecessor
	52 Weeks Ended	53 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017	December 29, 2015	June 30, 2015
Balance at beginning of period	\$ 212	\$ 212	\$ 212	\$ —
Increases (decreases) related to prior year tax positions	—	—	—	—
Increases (decreases) related to current year tax positions	—	—	—	212
Expiration of the statute of limitations for the assessment of taxes	—	—	—	—
Settlements	—	—	—	—
Balance at end of period	\$ 212	\$ 212	\$ 212	\$ 212

The Company is subject to U.S. and state income taxes. The Company is no longer subject to federal and state income tax examinations for years before 2014 and 2013, respectively. However, to the extent allowed by law, the tax authorities may have the right to examine prior periods where net operating losses and tax credits were generated and carried forward, and make adjustments up to the amount of the net operating loss and tax credit carry forward amounts.

The Protecting Americans From Tax Hikes (PATH) Act was enacted on December 21, 2015. Included within this legislation was the work opportunity credit, and extension of the fifty percent first year bonus depreciation, both of which had previously expired on December 31, 2014. As the legislation was enacted during the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2015, the impact was not previously accounted for in the Company's effective tax rate or income tax payable calculations. The impact to the effective tax rate during the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) was approximately (18.5)% .

16. Leases

As of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor), deferred rent liability was \$17.4 million and \$18.7 million , respectively, which includes unfavorable lease liabilities of \$14.5 million and \$17.1 million , respectively, net of accumulated amortization of \$6.1 million and \$3.9 million , respectively.

Franchise sublease income which includes minimum rent, percentage rent, real estate taxes and common area maintenance are classified separately under franchise sublease income on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income. Franchise sublease expenses which include minimum rent, percentage rent, real estate taxes and common area maintenance are classified separately under occupancy and other – franchise subleases on the consolidated statements of comprehensive income. Total franchise sublease income and franchise sublease expense for the Company comprise the following (in thousands):

	Successor			Predecessor
	52 Weeks Ended	53 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017	December 29, 2015	June 30, 2015
Sublease rent income	\$ (2,844)	\$ (2,343)	\$ (1,183)	\$ (1,183)
Sublease rent expense	2,608	2,207	1,140	1,109

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

Sublease rent income includes contingent rentals based on sales totaling \$0.1 million during both the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor) and the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and \$0.3 million during both the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and June 30, 2015 (Predecessor).

Total rent expense for the Company for all non-cancelable operating leases comprise the following (in thousands):

	Successor			Predecessor
	52 Weeks Ended	53 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended	26 Weeks Ended
	January 2, 2018	January 3, 2017	December 29, 2015	June 30, 2015
Minimum rental expense	\$ 27,372	\$ 26,465	\$ 12,384	\$ 12,405
Favorable and unfavorable lease assets and liabilities amortization, net	(809)	(607)	(364)	3
Straight-line rent expense	826	781	518	277
Contingent rent expense	685	805	2,033	2,063
	<u>\$ 28,074</u>	<u>\$ 27,444</u>	<u>\$ 14,571</u>	<u>\$ 14,748</u>

As of January 2, 2018 (Successor), the Company is obligated under various capital leases having interest rates that average approximately 8% .

Minimum rental commitments and sublease minimum rental receipts as of January 2, 2018 (Successor), under capital and operating leases having an initial non-cancelable term of one year or more are shown in the following table (in thousands):

	Rental Payments		Rental Receipts	
	Capital Lease and Deemed Landlord Financing Liabilities	Operating Leases	Operating Subleases	Net Lease Commitments
2018	\$ 3,600	\$ 31,763	\$ (2,763)	\$ 32,600
2019	3,102	29,471	(2,794)	29,779
2020	2,858	27,558	(2,644)	27,772
2021	2,727	26,082	(2,619)	26,190
2022	2,597	24,052	(2,604)	24,045
Thereafter	28,808	147,544	(20,188)	156,164
Total minimum lease payments	<u>\$ 43,692</u>	<u>\$ 286,470</u>	<u>\$ (33,612)</u>	<u>\$ 296,550</u>
Imputed interest	(23,639)			
Present value of payments	<u>\$ 20,053</u>			

The Company has subleased 31 properties to other third parties where the Company remains primarily liable to the landlord for the performance of all obligations in the event that the sub-lessee does not perform its obligations under the lease. As a result of the sublease arrangements, future minimum rental commitments under operating leases will be offset by sublease amounts to be paid by the sub-lessee. The total of minimum sublease amounts to be received in the future under non-cancelable subleases is \$33.6 million as of January 2, 2018 (Successor).

The amounts in operating lease and operating subleases in the table above include amounts for restaurant operating leases related to 11 of the 12 restaurants closed in the fourth fiscal quarter of 2015 (one such lease was terminated) and related subleases both of which have been included in our restaurant closure liability on our consolidated balance sheets as of January 2, 2018 (Successor) on a present value basis.

During Fiscal 2017, the Company entered into two sale leaseback arrangements with third party private investors. These sale-leaseback transactions do not provide for any continuing involvement by the Company other than normal leases where the Company intends to use the property during the lease term. The leases have been accounted for as operating leases. The net

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

proceeds from the transactions totaled approximately \$9.9 million . Under one of the arrangements, the Company sold the land and building of an existing restaurant and leased it back for a term of 20 years. Under the other arrangement, the Company sold the land and building of a recently constructed restaurant and leased it back for a term of 20 years. The sale of these properties resulted in a loss of \$0.3 million which is included in loss on disposal of assets, net in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

During Fiscal 2016, the Company entered into two sale-leaseback arrangements with third party private investors. These sale-leaseback transactions do not provide for any continuing involvement by the Company other than normal leases where the Company intends to use the properties during the lease terms. The leases have been accounted for as operating leases. The net proceeds from these transactions were \$3.4 million . Under one of the arrangements, the Company sold the land and building of an existing restaurant and leased it back for a term of one year with the option to terminate with 60 days notice. Under the other arrangement, the Company sold the land and building of an acquired franchise-operated restaurant (see Note 6) and leased it back for a term of 20 years. The sale of these properties resulted in an immaterial loss which is included in loss on disposal of assets, net in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

17. Commitments and Contingencies

The primary claims in the Company's business are workers' compensation and general liabilities. These insurance programs are self-insured or high deductible programs with excess coverage that management believes is sufficient to adequately protect the Company. In the opinion of management, adequate provision has been made for all incurred claims up to the self-insured or high deductible limits, including provision for estimated claims incurred but not reported. Because of the uncertainty of the ultimate resolution of outstanding claims, as well as the uncertainty regarding claims incurred but not reported, it is possible that management's provision for these losses could change materially. However, no estimate can currently be made of the range of additional losses.

Purchasing Commitments

The Company enters into various purchase obligations in the ordinary course of business, generally of short term nature. Those that are binding primarily relate to commitments for food purchases and supplies, amounts owed under contractor and subcontractor agreements, orders submitted for equipment for restaurants under construction, information technology service agreements and marketing initiatives, some of which are related to both company-operated and franchise-operated locations. The Company also has a long-term beverage supply agreement with a major beverage vendor whereby marketing rebates are provided to the Company and its franchisees based upon the volumes of purchases for system-wide restaurants which vary according to demand for beverage syrup. This contract has terms extending into 2021 . The Company's future estimated cash payments under existing contractual purchase obligations for goods and services as of January 2, 2018 (Successor), are approximately \$70.4 million . The Company has excluded agreements that are cancelable without penalty.

Severance and Executive Employment Agreements

The Company has Severance Agreements and Executive Employment Agreements with certain key officers of the Company, which provide for payment of one year base salary and bonus incentive plan payments, in the event that the officers are terminated without cause. As of January 2, 2018 (Successor) and January 3, 2017 (Successor) the Company's total contingent liability with respect to the aforementioned agreements is \$2.6 million and \$3.5 million , respectively, which was not recorded in the consolidated financial statements.

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (continued)

Litigation

On April 23, 2015, a purported class action and derivative complaint, *Jeffery Tomasulo, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated v. Levy Acquisition Sponsor, LLC, Lawrence F. Levy, Howard B. Bernick, Marc S. Simon, Craig J. Duchossois, Ari B. Levy, Steven C. Florsheim, Gregory G. Flynn, Del Taco Holdings, Inc., and Levy Acquisition Corp.* (“Complaint”), was filed in the Circuit Court of Cook County, Illinois (the “Circuit Court”), relating to the then proposed Business Combination pursuant to the Merger Agreement. The Complaint, which purported to be brought as a class action on behalf of all of the holders of the Company’s common stock, generally alleged that the Company’s pre-merger directors breached their fiduciary duties to stockholders by facilitating the then proposed Business Combination and that the Company’s preliminary proxy statement that was filed with the SEC on April 2, 2015 was materially misleading and/or incomplete. On May 19, 2016, Tomasulo, on behalf of himself and members of a settlement class entered into a Stipulation of Settlement with the defendants pursuant to which the plaintiff class broadly released claims relating to the Merger, including all claims that the Company’s preliminary proxy statement or definitive proxy statement were misleading or improper. Under the settlement, defendants were not required to make any payment to the plaintiff or the plaintiff class but agreed to pay a portion of the hourly fee accrued by plaintiff’s counsel. On July 26, 2016, the Court held a final hearing and then certified a settlement class, approved the Stipulation of Settlement and entered a final judgment dismissing the action.

The Company has a directors and officers liability insurance policy to cover legal defense costs, judgments and settlements stemming from covered claims, subject to an insurance deductible of \$0.25 million per claim. The Company’s insurance company has acknowledged coverage for claims asserted in the Complaint against covered persons, subject to a reservation of rights. As of December 29, 2015 (Successor), the Company had an insurance receivable of \$0.3 million for legal defense costs it paid in excess of the deductible. The reimbursement from the insurance company was received in January 2016. During the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), and the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), the Company incurred \$0.3 million, \$0.1 million and \$0.7 million, respectively, in legal defense fees for which the Company received reimbursement of \$0.8 million from the insurance company which includes payment of the \$0.3 million insurance receivable at December 29, 2015 (Successor). The legal defense fees incurred are reported in transaction-related costs on the accompanying consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

In July 2013, a former Del Taco employee filed a purported class action complaint alleging that Del Taco has failed to pay overtime wages and has not appropriately provided meal breaks to its California general managers. On March 4, 2016, the Court denied class certification on the overtime and meal period claims. At that time, the Court granted class certification on the wage statement issue only. On October 30, 2017, the Court granted Del Taco’s Motion to Decertify the Wage Statement Class. Thereafter, the parties settled the matter with the former Del Taco employee on an individual basis. As a result, the case was dismissed with prejudice in its entirety.

In March 2014, a former Del Taco employee filed a purported class action complaint alleging that Del Taco has not appropriately provided meal breaks and failed to pay wages to its California hourly employees. Discovery is in process and Del Taco intends to assert all of its defenses to this threatened class action and the individual claims. Del Taco has several defenses to the action that it believes should prevent the certification of the class, as well as the potential assessment of any damages on a class basis. Legal proceedings are inherently unpredictable, and the Company is not able to predict the ultimate outcome or cost of the unresolved matter. However, based on management’s current understanding of the relevant facts and circumstances, the Company does not believe that these proceedings give rise to a probable or estimable loss and should not have a material adverse effect on the Company’s financial position, operations or cash flows. Therefore, Del Taco has not recorded any amount for the claim as of January 2, 2018 (Successor).

The Company and its subsidiaries are parties to other legal proceedings incidental to their businesses, including claims alleging the Company’s restaurants do not comply with the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990. In the opinion of management, based upon information currently available, the ultimate liability with respect to those other actions will not have a material effect on the operating results, cash flows or the financial position of the Company.

18. Retirement Plans

The Company has a 401(k) retirement plan which covers all employees who meet certain age and minimum service hour requirements who elect to participate and provided for matching contributions totaling approximately \$82,000 during the fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), \$80,000 during the fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor) and \$40,000 during both the twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and June 30, 2015 (Predecessor), respectively.

19. Quarterly Financial Data (Unaudited)

Summarized unaudited quarterly financial data (amounts in thousands except share and per share data):

Fiscal Year 2017	Successor			
	16 Weeks Ended	12 Weeks Ended		
	January 2, 2018	September 12, 2017	June 20, 2017	March 28, 2017
Total revenue	\$ 146,542	\$ 110,988	\$ 108,581	\$ 105,345
Income from operations	12,825	9,533	10,276	8,613
Net income	35,202	5,101	5,330	4,238
Earnings per share:				
Basic	\$ 0.91	\$ 0.13	\$ 0.14	\$ 0.11
Diluted	\$ 0.89	\$ 0.13	\$ 0.13	\$ 0.10

Fiscal Year 2016	Successor			
	17 Weeks Ended	12 Weeks Ended		
	January 3, 2017	September 6, 2016	June 14, 2016	March 22, 2016
Total revenue	\$ 150,235	\$ 104,419	\$ 100,026	\$ 97,403
Income from operations	15,927	10,927	9,706	6,740
Net income	8,039	4,949 ⁽¹⁾	4,864 ⁽²⁾	3,061 ⁽³⁾
Earnings per share:				
Basic	\$ 0.21	\$ 0.13	\$ 0.13	\$ 0.08
Diluted	\$ 0.20	\$ 0.13	\$ 0.13	\$ 0.08

(1) Includes transaction-related costs of \$0.5 million .

(2) Includes transaction-related costs of \$0.1 million .

(3) Includes transaction-related costs of \$0.1 million .

ITEM 9. Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure

None.

ITEM 9A. Controls and Procedures

Conclusion Regarding the Effectiveness of Disclosure Controls and Procedures

Under the supervision and with the participation of our senior management, consisting of our chief executive officer and our chief financial officer, we conducted an evaluation of the effectiveness of the design and operation of our disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"), as of the end of the period covered by this report (the "Evaluation Date"). Based on that evaluation, the

[Table of Contents](#)

Company's management, including our chief executive officer and chief financial officer, concluded that as of the Evaluation Date our disclosure controls and procedures were effective.

Our controls and procedures are based on assumptions. Additionally, even effective controls and procedures only provide reasonable assurance of achieving their objectives. Accordingly, we cannot guarantee that our controls and procedures will succeed or be adhered to in all circumstances.

We have evaluated our disclosure controls and procedures with the participation, and under the supervision, of our management, including our chief executive and chief financial officer. Based on this evaluation, our chief executive officer and chief financial officer have concluded that our disclosure controls and procedures were effective as of the end of the period covered by this report.

Internal Control over Financial Reporting

(a) Management's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting

Our management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting as defined in Rule 13a-15(f) under the Exchange Act. Our internal control system is designed to provide reasonable assurance to our management regarding the preparation and fair presentation of published financial statements. All internal control systems, no matter how well designed, have inherent limitations. Therefore, even those systems determined to be effective can provide only reasonable assurance with respect to the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

Management has assessed the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting as of January 2, 2018 . In making its assessment of internal control over financial reporting, management used the criteria set forth in *Internal Control - Integrated Framework* scope of the Controls Evaluation (2013 Framework) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO).

Management has concluded that, as of January 2, 2018 , our internal control over financial reporting was effective based on these criteria.

This annual report on Form 10-K does not include an attestation report of our independent registered public accounting firm, because as an "emerging growth company" under the JOBS Act our independent registered public accounting firm is not required to issue such an attestation report.

(b) Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting

No changes in our internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f) under the Exchange Act) occurred during the fourth fiscal quarter that have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

[Table of Contents](#)

ITEM 9B. *Other Information*

None.

PART III

ITEM 10. *Directors, Executive Officers, and Corporate Governance*

Information with respect to the Company's Executive Officers is set forth in Item 1 of Part I of this Annual Report under the heading "Executive Officers of the Registrant." pursuant to General Instruction G of Form 10-K. The information required to be furnished pursuant to this item with respect to Directors of the Company will be set forth under the caption "Election of Directors" in the Company's proxy statement (the "2018 Proxy Statement") to be furnished to stockholders in connection with the solicitation of proxies by the Company's Board of Directors for use at the 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders, and is incorporated herein by reference.

The information required to be furnished pursuant to this item with respect to compliance with Section 16(a) of the Exchange Act will be set forth under the caption "Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance" in the 2018 Proxy Statement, and is incorporated herein by reference.

The information required to be furnished pursuant to this item with respect to the Audit Committee and the Audit Committee financial expert will be set forth under the caption "Committees of the Board of Directors" in the 2018 Proxy Statement, and is incorporated herein by reference.

Information required to be furnished pursuant to this item with respect to and any material changes to the process by which security holders may recommend nominees to the Board of Directors will be set forth under the caption "Stockholder Proposals for the 2018 Annual Meeting and Nominations of Directors" in the 2018 Proxy Statement, and is incorporated herein by reference.

The Company has adopted a Code of Ethics that applies to all of our employees. These documents, along with charters of our Audit, Compensation, and Corporate Governance and Nominating Committees, are posted on the Company's website at www.investor.deltaco.com. Disclosures of amendments to or waivers with regard to the provisions of the Code of Ethics also will be posted on the Company's website.

ITEM 11. *Executive Compensation*

The information required to be furnished pursuant to this item will be set forth under the caption "Executive Compensation", "Corporate Governance" and in the Director Compensation Table and its accompanying narrative in the 2018 Proxy Statement, and is incorporated herein by reference.

ITEM 12. *Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters*

The following table presents information regarding the Company's common stock authorized for issuance under the Company's equity compensation plans.

	(a)	(b)	(c)
	Number of Securities to be Issued Upon Exercise of Outstanding Options and Rights	Weighted-Average Exercise Price of Outstanding Options and Rights (1)	Number of Securities Remaining Available for Future Issuance Under Equity Compensation Plans (excluding securities reflected in column (a))
Equity Compensation Plans Approved by Security Holders:	1,505,910	\$ 11.04	1,361,986
Equity Compensation Plans Not Approved by Securities Holders	None	N/A	None
Total	1,505,910	\$ 11.04	1,361,986

(1) The weighted-average exercise price in column (b) includes the weighted-average exercise price of stock options only.

[Table of Contents](#)

Other information required to be furnished pursuant to this will be set forth under the caption “Stock Ownership” in the 2018 Proxy Statement, and is incorporated herein by reference.

ITEM 13. *Certain Relationships and Related Transaction and Director Independence*

The information required to be furnished pursuant to this item will be set forth under the captions “Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions” and “Corporate Governance” in the 2018 Proxy Statement, and is incorporated herein by reference.

ITEM 14. *Principal Accounting Fees and Services*

The information required to be furnished pursuant to this item will be set forth under the caption “Principal Accounting Firm Fees” in the 2018 Proxy Statement, and is incorporated herein by reference.

ITEM 15. Exhibits, Financial Statement Schedules

1. All Financial statements

Consolidated financial statements filed as part of this report are listed under Item 8. “Financial Statements and Supplementary Data.”

2. Financial statement schedules

Schedule II. Valuation and Qualifying Accounts - Fifty-two weeks ended January 2, 2018 (Successor), fifty-three weeks ended January 3, 2017 (Successor), twenty-six weeks ended December 29, 2015 (Successor) and twenty-six weeks ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor).

All other schedules are omitted as the required information is inapplicable, or the information required is included in the consolidated financial statements or the notes thereto.

3. Exhibits

The exhibits listed on the accompanying Exhibit Index are filed or incorporated by reference as part of this report.

Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.
Schedule II - Valuation and Qualifying Accounts
 Valuation Allowance for Deferred Tax Assets
 (in thousands)

Description	Balance at beginning of period	Additions		Deductions	Balance at end of period
		Charged to costs and expenses	Charge to other accounts		
Fifty-Two Weeks Ended January 2, 2018 (Successor)	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —
Fifty-Three Weeks Ended January 3, 2017 (Successor)	—	—	—	—	—
Twenty-Six Weeks Ended December 29, 2015 (Successor)	1,926 ^(A)	—	—	(1,926)	\$ —
Twenty-Six Weeks Ended June 30, 2015 (Predecessor)	20,217	—	—	(2,819)	\$ 17,398 ^(B)

^(A) Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. had a full valuation allowance on its deferred taxes assets of \$1.9 million as of June 30, 2015 which was not presented with Del Taco Holdings, Inc.'s (DTH) predecessor financial results.

^(B) As part of purchase accounting, Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. (the "Company") was required to record all of DTH's acquired assets and liabilities at their acquisition date fair value, including deferred income taxes. The Company considered the weight of both positive and negative evidence and concluded that it is more likely than not that DTH's deferred tax assets will be realized and that no valuation allowance on DTH's deferred tax asset was required as of the date of acquisition. As a result, the Company established deferred tax assets as well as deferred tax liabilities related to indefinite-lived intangibles through the purchase price allocation and the \$17.4 million valuation allowance as of June 30, 2015 (Predecessor) was not established through purchase accounting.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

DEL TACO RESTAURANTS, INC.

Date: March 14, 2018

/s/ John D. Cappasola, Jr.

John D. Cappasola, Jr.

President and Chief Executive Officer

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the Registrant and in the capacities indicated on March 14, 2018 .

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>
<u>/s/ JOHN D. C APPASOLA, JR.</u> (John D. Cappasola, Jr.)	President and Chief Executive Officer, Director (principal executive officer)
<u>/s/ STEVEN L. BRAKE</u> (Steven L. Brake)	Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer (principal financial and accounting officer)
<u>/s/ EILEEN A. APTMAN</u> (Eileen A. Aptman)	Director
<u>/s/ ARI B. LEVY</u> (Ari B. Levy)	Director
<u>/s/ LAWRENCE F. LEVY</u> (Lawrence F. Levy)	Director
<u>/s/ R.J. MELMAN</u> (R.J. Melman)	Director
<u>/s/ JOSEPH S TEIN</u> (Joseph Stein)	Director
<u>/s/ PATRICK D. WALSH</u> (Patrick D. Walsh)	Director

EXHIBIT INDEX

Exhibit No.	Description
2.1^	Agreement and Plan of Merger, dated as of March 12, 2015, by and among Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. (formerly known as Levy Acquisition Corp.), Levy Merger Sub, LLC and Del Taco Holdings, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 2.1 to Del Taco Restaurant Inc.'s Current Report on Form 8-K (File No. 001-36197) filed with the SEC on March 12, 2015).
3.1	Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K (File No. 001-36197) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on July 2, 2015).
3.2	Bylaws (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.3 to Del Taco Restaurant, Inc.'s Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-191587), filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on October 7, 2013).
4.1	Specimen Common Stock Certificate (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K (File No. 001-36197) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on July 2, 2015).
4.2	Specimen Warrant Certificate (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.3 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K (File No. 001-36197) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on July 2, 2015).
4.3	Warrant Agreement, dated as of November 13, 2013, between Del Taco Restaurant, Inc. (formerly known as Levy Acquisition Corp.) and Continental Stock Transfer and Trust Company (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.2 to Levy Acquisition Corp.'s Current Report on Form 8-K (File No. 001-36197), filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on November 19, 2013).
10.1	Credit Agreement, dated as of August 4, 2015, among Sagittarius Restaurants LLC, as Borrower, Del Taco Holdings, Inc., as Holdings, certain other subsidiaries of Holdings party thereto, Bank of America, N.A., as Administrative Agent, Swing Line Lender and L/C Issuer, and the other lenders party thereto (incorporated by reference to the Company's Form 8-k filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on August 7, 2015).
10.2*	Stockholders Agreement, dated as of March 12, 2015, by and among Del Taco Restaurant Inc. (formerly known as Levy Acquisition Corp.) and certain holders of common stock of Del Taco Restaurant Inc. and certain other persons (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Del Taco Restaurant Inc.'s Current Report on Form 8-K (File No. 001-36197), filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on March 12, 2015).
10.3*	Employment Letter Agreement, dated January 15, 2009, between Paul J.B. Murphy, III and Del Taco Holdings, Inc. (as amended on December 15, 2014) (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Del Taco Restaurant Inc.'s Current Report on Form 8-K (File No. 001-36197) filed with the SEC on July 2, 2015).
10.4*	Employment Letter Agreement, dated July 17, 2008, between John Cappasola, Jr. and Del Taco Holdings, Inc. (as amended on May 3, 2011 and December 15, 2014) (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 to Del Taco Restaurant Inc.'s Current Report on Form 8-K (File No. 001-36197) filed with the SEC on July 2, 2015).
10.5*	Severance Agreement, dated July 21, 2009, between Steven L. Brake and Del Taco Holdings, Inc. (as amended on December 15, 2014) (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.5 to Del Taco Restaurant Inc.'s Current Report on Form 8-K (File No. 001-36197) filed with the SEC on July 2, 2015).
10.6*	Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. Omnibus Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Annex C to Del Taco Restaurant Inc.'s (formerly known as Levy Acquisition Corp.) definitive proxy statement (File No. 001-36197) filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on June 11, 2015).
10.7	Form of Development Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.8 to Del Taco Restaurant Inc.'s Current Report on Form 8-K (File No. 001-36197) filed with the SEC on July 2, 2015).
10.8	Private Placement Warrants Purchase Agreement, dated August 5, 2013, between the Company and Levy Acquisition Sponsor, LLC (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.6 to the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-191587), filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on October 7, 2013.)

Table of Contents

10.9*	<u>Form of Restricted Stock Award Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.16 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K (File No. 001-36197), filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on March 8, 2016).</u>
10.10*	<u>Form of Stock Option Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.17 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K (File No. 001-36197), filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on March 8, 2016).</u>
10.11*	<u>Severance Agreement, dated June 7, 2016, between Paul J.B. Murphy, III and Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q (File No. 001-36197), filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on July 20, 2016).</u>
10.12*	<u>Severance Agreement, dated June 9, 2016, between Steven L. Brake and Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q (File No. 001-36197), filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on July 20, 2016).</u>
10.13*	<u>Severance Agreement, dated June 17, 2016, between John D. Cappasola, Jr. and Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q (File No. 001-36197), filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on July 20, 2016).</u>
10.14	<u>Tender Support Agreement, dated as of July 11, 2016 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on July 11, 2016).</u>
21.1	<u>Subsidiaries of the registrant.</u>
23.1	<u>Consent of Ernst & Young LLP</u>
31.1	<u>Certification of the Chief Executive Officer required by Rule 13a-14(a) or Rule 15d-14(a).</u>
31.2	<u>Certification of the Chief Financial Officer required by Rule 13a-14(a) or Rule 15d-14(a).</u>
32.1	<u>Certification of the Chief Executive Officer required by Rule 13a-14(b) or Rule 15d-14(b) and 18 U.S.C. 1350.</u>
32.2	<u>Certification of the Chief Financial Officer required by Rule 13a-14(b) or Rule 15d-14(b) and 18 U.S.C. 1350.</u>
101.INS	XBRL Instance Document.
101.SCH	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema Document.
101.CAL	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase Document.
101.LAB	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase Document.
101.PRE	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase Document.
101.DEF	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Document.

* Management contract or compensatory plan or arrangement.

^ The exhibits and schedules to this Exhibit have been omitted in accordance with Regulation S-K Item 601(b)(2). The Registrant agrees to furnish supplementally a copy of all omitted exhibits and schedules to the Securities and Exchange Commission upon its request.

SUBSIDIARIES OF DEL TACO RESTAURANTS, INC.

<u>Subsidiary Legal Name</u>	<u>State or Country of Incorporation</u>
Del Taco Holdings, Inc.	Delaware
F&C Restaurant Holding Co.	Delaware
Sagittarius Restaurants LLC	Delaware
Kerry Foods International LLC	California
Del Taco LLC	California
DT-LA VERNE, LTD.	California
DT/COSTA MESA RESTAURANT CO.	California

Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

We consent to the incorporation by reference in the following Registration Statements:

- (1) Registration Statement (Form S-3 No. 333-205467) and related prospectus of Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. and
- (2) Registration Statement (Form S-8 No. 333-206927) pertaining to the 2015 Omnibus Incentive Plan of Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.;

of our report dated March 14, 2018 , with respect to the consolidated financial statements and schedule of Del Taco Restaurants, Inc., included in this Annual Report (Form 10-K) of Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. for the year ended January 2, 2018 .

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

Irvine, California
March 14, 2018

CERTIFICATIONS

I, John D. Cappasola, Jr., certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
 - a. Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
 - b. Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
 - c. Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
 - d. Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
 - a. All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
 - b. Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: March 14, 2018

/s/ John D. Cappasola, Jr.
John D. Cappasola, Jr.
President and Chief Executive Officer
(principal executive officer)

CERTIFICATIONS

I, Steven L. Brake, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Del Taco Restaurants, Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
 - a. Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
 - b. Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
 - c. Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
 - d. Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
 - a. All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
 - b. Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: March 14, 2018

/s/ Steven L. Brake

Steven L. Brake

Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer

(principal financial officer)

CERTIFICATION OF PERIOD REPORT

I, John D. Cappasola, Jr., President and Chief Executive Officer of Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. (the "Company"), certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that, to the best of my knowledge:

- (1) the Annual Report on Form 10-K of the Company for the period ended January 2, 2018 (the "Report") fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
- (2) the information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

Date: March 14, 2018

/s/ John D. Cappasola, Jr.

John D. Cappasola, Jr.

President and Chief Executive Officer

(principal executive officer)

CERTIFICATION OF PERIOD REPORT

I, Steven L. Brake, Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer of Del Taco Restaurants, Inc. (the "Company"), certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that, to the best of my knowledge:

- (1) the Annual Report on Form 10-K of the Company for the period ended January 2, 2018 (the "Report") fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
- (2) the information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

Date: March 14, 2018

/s/ Steven L. Brake

Steven L. Brake

Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer
(principal financial officer)